CITROËN

C3

Owner's Manual

nothing
moves us
like citroën



WELCOME

Thank you for choosing Citroën C3.
This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.
We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Service Booklet.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.
The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.
If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Owner's Manual** is passed on to the new owner.

OBTAIN THE OWNER'S MANUAL

ONLINE

View or download the Owner's Manual at the following address:
http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/
Scan this QR Code for direct access.
Select:
– the language,
– the vehicle and body style,
– the issue period of the Owner's Manual corresponding to the date of 1st registration of the vehicle.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

PRINTED VERSION

Order the Owner's Manual in paper format from a CITROËN dealer.

INTRODUCTION....3 1
GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE....9 2
DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL....56 3
INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM....80 4
STARTING & OPERATING....103 5
ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS (ADAS)....141 6
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY....166 7
MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE....186 8
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS....211 9
CUSTOMER INFORMATION....220 10
INDEX....229 11

CONTENTS

Introduction..... 3
- Eco-driving..... 3
- Link to Company App and Website..... 4
- How To Use This Manual..... 4
- Propulsion Type..... 5
- Vehicle Modifications - Alterations..... 7

Getting to know your vehicle..... 9
- Keys..... 9
- Vehicle Security System..... 14
- Doors..... 16
- Windows..... 18
- Mirrors..... 20
- Head Restraints..... 21
- Seats..... 23
- Seat Belts..... 26
- Airbags System..... 28
- Child Restraints..... 32
- Steering Wheel..... 40
- Ignition Switch..... 41
- Windshield Wiper And Washer..... 42
- Exterior Lights..... 44
- Interior Lights..... 49
- Interior Storage-Interior Fittings..... 50

Dashboard Instruments And Control..... 56
- Instrument Panel Overview..... 56
- Instrument Cluster..... 58
- Warning and indicator lights..... 63
- Climate Controls..... 73

Infotainment System..... 80
- Introduction about Infotainment System..... 80
- Radio..... 86
- Multimedia System..... 88
- Smartphone Station..... 99
- Main controls..... 100
- 3rd Party Apps..... 101

Starting & Operating..... 103
- Starting And Stopping The Engine..... 103
- Audible pedestrian warning system..... 108
- Brakes..... 109
- Transmission..... 113
- Air Suspension..... 119
- Engine Exhaust..... 119
- Fuel..... 120
- Charging..... 121
- Vehicle Loading..... 133
- Driving tips..... 138

Advanced Driving Assistance Systems (ADAS)..... 141
- Introduction To Assistance Systems..... 141
- Speed Control Assistance Systems..... 143
- Collision Avoidance Assistance Systems..... 146
- Vehicle Stability Assistance System..... 150
- Braking Performance Assistance Systems..... 151
- Lane Assistance Systems..... 151
- Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance Systems..... 156
- Driver's Attention Assistance Systems..... 158
- Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System..... 161
- Utility Assistance Features..... 161

In Case Of Emergency..... 166
- Hazard Warning Lights..... 166
- Assist And SOS..... 166
- Warning triangle..... 169
- Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing..... 169
- Tire Repair Kit..... 174
- Jump Starting..... 177
- Towing..... 183

Maintenance And Vehicle Care..... 186
- Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care..... 186
- Scheduled Servicing..... 186
- Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts..... 188
- Engine Compartment..... 189
- Vehicle Maintenance..... 195
- Fuses..... 197
- Bulb Replacement..... 197
- Tires and Wheels..... 202
- Vehicle storage..... 205
- Bodywork-Exterior Care..... 207
- Interior care..... 207

Technical Specifications..... 211
- Vehicle Identification..... 211
- Vehicle Data..... 212
- Fluids and Lubricants..... 217
- Fluid Capacities..... 219

Customer Information..... 220
- Declaration of Conformity..... 220
- Fuel Consumption And CO Emissions..... 221
- Disposal Prescriptions..... 221
- REACH..... 221
- Vehicle data recording and privacy..... 221

INTRODUCTION

Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimize the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.
With an automatic gearbox, prefer automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.
The gear shift indicator prompts to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO_2 emissions and decrease general traffic noise.
With a hybrid engine, engine braking is more efficient. Anticipate slowing down as much as possible and, if possible, prefer deceleration with engine braking in order to charge the traction battery, to increase all-electric driving and to reduce fuel consumption.
When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).
Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.
Adapt the use of the headlamps and/or foglights to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country where driving.
Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.
As a passenger, avoid connecting any multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy.
Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimize wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.
At the end of winter, remove snow tires and refit summer tires.

Comply with the servicing instructions

Check trey pressures regularly, with the tires cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tires on the trailer or caravan.

Have the vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.
When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow.
The fuel consumption of the new vehicle stabilizes consistently on average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometers).

Optimizing the driving range of electrified vehicles

The vehicle's consumption of electrical energy greatly depends on the route profile, speed and driving style, as well as the use of the heating/ air conditioning.
Prefer the **ECO** and **CHARGE** zones of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Hybrid 48 V Vehicles (MHEV)

Maximize the vehicle's inertia by releasing the accelerator pedal so that the vehicle slows down by itself (e.g. when driving downhill or approaching a traffic light).

When the accelerator pedal is released, provided that the slider on the power indicator in the instrument panel is still moving in the **CHARGE** zone, energy recovery is optimal.

Energy recovery makes it possible to make efficient use of the "passive" phases of driving (deceleration).

The recovered energy is used to recharge the traction battery and is then used for all-electric driving or further acceleration.
When the traction battery is almost full, the energy recovery is gradually reduced.

Electric vehicles (BEV)

Program a destination into the vehicle's GPS navigation system to optimize consumption during a journey.

Anticipate the need to slow down, and brake smoothly, whenever possible using engine braking with the regenerative braking function, which will move the power indicator into the "**CHARGE**" zone.

Use the air conditioning rather than the heating to demist the passenger compartment.

Link to Company App and Website

Installation of the app with the following QR code:

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play



https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

How To Use This Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Some descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to a specific vehicle due to model variant,**

country specifications, special equipment or accessories.

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable searching for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support a specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Symbols Key

WARNING

For any work on the vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the required technical information, skills and equipment, all of which a dealer is able to provide.

NOTE

Information concerning personal data

Electronic control units are installed in the vehicle. Some of these are required for the correct operation of the vehicle, some others assist while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.
For more information on the data recorded in the vehicle and its possible processing outside the vehicle, refer to the "Customer Information".


Note


Environmental protection feature


Left-hand drive vehicle


Right-hand drive vehicle


Location of the equipment / button described using a black area.

Safety Messages

DANGER

Text marked **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury.

Disregarding this information may endanger life.

WARNING

Text marked **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury.

Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

CAUTION

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle.

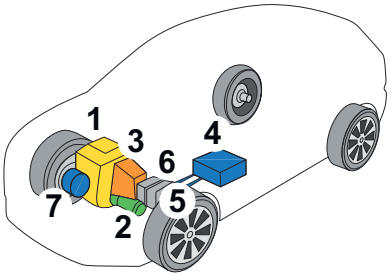
Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Propulsion Type

Internal Combustion Engine (ICE)

An ICE vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine only.

Hybrid 48 V Vehicle (MHEV)



1 Petrol engine

2 Electric motor

3 6-speed electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)

4 48 V traction battery

5 12 V accessory battery

6 DC/DC converter

7 Belt starter

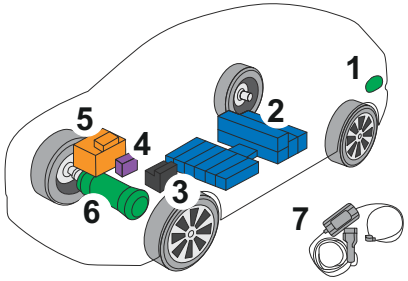
The Hybrid 48 V technology requires no connection to charge the traction battery.

The **Hybrid system** does not operate continuously, but is activated according to the state of the vehicle, the state of charge of the traction battery, the thermal comfort of the passenger compartment (switching on the heating or air conditioning), the driving conditions (acceleration, deceleration, braking, engine start-up) and the road conditions (uphill, downhill):

- The vehicle always starts with the petrol engine to ensure the efficiency of the catalytic converter and the availability of the brake assist.
- In normal driving, the petrol engine and electric motor work together or separately to optimize fuel consumption and electrical energy or to charge the traction battery.
- During the acceleration phases, the electric motor provides an additional boost to reach the torque needed as fast as possible and to improve the acceleration at low speed.
- During the deceleration phases, the electric motor charges the traction battery, using the inertia of the vehicle.
- The driving in all-electric is possible for parking maneuvering, for 20 mph (30 km/h) speed zones in city, on urban and country roads with smooth driving and on motorways in slight deceleration or downhill.

The electric motor is integrated into the automatic gearbox.
The DC/DC converter provides the link between the 12 V accessory power supply and the 48 V traction power supply.
The belt starter restarts the petrol engine after driving in all-electric.

Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)



1 Charging connectors

2 Traction battery

3 Accessory battery

4 Heat pump

5 On-board charger

6 Electric motor

7 Charging cable

The charging connectors **(1)** enable 3 types of charging:

- Domestic charging in mode 2 using a domestic socket and associated charging cable **(7)**.
- Accelerated charging in mode 3 using an accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**).

- Superfast charging in mode 4 using a fast public charger.

The 400 V traction battery **(2)** uses Lithium-Ion technology. It stores and supplies the energy required for the operation of the electric motor, air conditioning and heating. Its charge level is represented by an indicator and a reserve power warning light on the instrument panel.

The 12 V accessory battery **(3)** powers the vehicle's conventional electrical system. It is recharged automatically by the traction battery via the on-board charger.

The heat pump **(4)** provides passenger compartment heating and regulates traction battery and on-board charger cooling.

The on-board charger **(5)** manages the domestic charging (mode 2) and accelerated charging (mode 3) of the traction battery as well as the recharging of the 12 V accessory battery.

The electric motor **(6)** provides propulsion in accordance with the selected driving mode and driving conditions. It recovers energy during vehicle braking and deceleration phases.

Vehicle Modifications - Alterations

⚠ WARNING

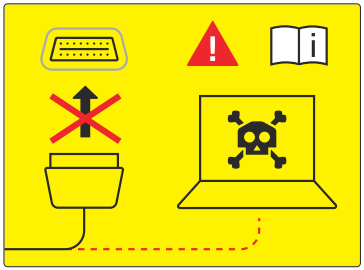
Do not remove the labels attached in different places on the vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

⚠ WARNING

Installing electrical accessories. The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by the Manufacturer may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of the vehicle. Contact a dealer or qualified workshops for information on the range of approved accessories.



As a safety measure, access to the **diagnostic socket**, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by the Manufacturer or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

⚠ WARNING

Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters. Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, contact a dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power,

aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the UN ECE Regulation 10.

Accessories Purchased By The Owner

After buying the car, in order to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electrical supply (e.g. radio, satellite anti-theft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electrical supply, contact a dealer, whose personnel will check whether the electrical system of the car is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful conventional battery.

⚠ WARNING

Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy wheel rims or non-standard wheel hubs: they could reduce the ventilation of the brakes and affect efficiency under sharp, repeated braking or on long descents.

Make sure that nothing obstructs the pedal stroke (mats, etc.).

Electric Devices Installation

Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of after-sales service must carry the following label: The Manufacturer authorises the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialised centre, in a workmanlike fashion and in compliance with Manufacturer's specifications.

⚠ WARNING

Traffic police may not allow the car on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the car.

This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.
The Manufacturer all not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by the Manufacturer and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

Radio Transmitting Equipment Installation

Radio transmitter equipment (car mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio etc.) cannot be used inside the car unless a separate aerial is mounted on the roof.

GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

⚠ CAUTION

The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.

Radio Remote Control Function

⚠ WARNING

The electronic key can affect a pacemaker. Keep the electronic key away from the breast.

Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key.



Push the latch to extract the integral key.



Locking the vehicle



Unlocking the vehicle

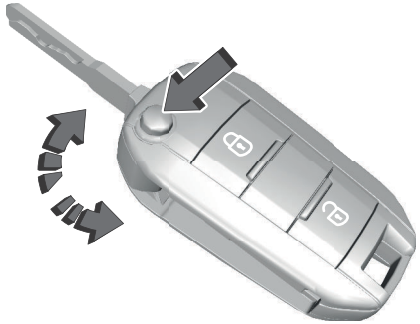
The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):

- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Opening the fuel tank cap.
- Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
- Locating the vehicle.
- Activating the vehicle's electronic immobilizer.

The remote control includes a conventional key that allows the central unlocking/locking of the vehicle using the door lock, as well as starting and switching off the engine.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unfolding / Folding the key



- Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

⚠ WARNING

The remote control may be damaged if you do not press the button.

Built-in key

Depending on version, using the built-in key, performing the following operations :

- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Backup Unlocking/Locking of the doors.



- To extract the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

⚠ WARNING

Once the emergency key is exctracted, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding backup procedures.

Locking the vehicle

When the locking button is pressed, the lighting of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- The locking of the vehicle for versions without alarm.
- The activation of the alarm for other versions.



- Press this button.

ⓘ NOTE

If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed, the locking does not take place. However, if the vehicle is equipped with the alarm, it is fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm was activated beforehand, the alarm is reactivated automatically.

Deadlocking

⚠ WARNING

Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.

The horn remains operational only for the left-hand drive vehicle.



Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

1. Ignition off, press the locking button.
2. Press the locking button again within 3 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

Advice

⚠ WARNING

Remote control.

The remote control is a sensitive, highfrequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.
Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.
The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

WARNING

Anti-theft protection.

Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.
For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

WARNING

Locking the vehicle.

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.
As a safety precaution, take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

NOTE

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.

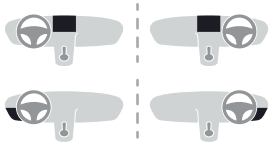
NOTE

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, central locking will not take place. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

NOTE

If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

Central Locking System





Manual

- Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the passenger compartment.

The indicator light comes on to confirm the central locking of the vehicle.

WARNING

Central locking does not take place if any of the front doors or rear doors are open (opening the boot does not prevent the central locking from operating).

NOTE

When locking/deadlocking from the outside. When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp is deactivated.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, you must use the remote control to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

NOTE

Transporting long or voluminous objects. Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked.

Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 3 mph (5 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Battery Replacement

A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

If the battery is flat, this warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.



1. To unclip the cover insert a small screwdriver between the back cover and the remote control.
2. Remove the back cover.
3. Extract the flat battery from its location.
4. Replace the battery with a battery of the same type. Pay attention to the installation position.
5. Clip the cover in place.

Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.

WARNING

This equipment contains a button type battery.
Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns! Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.
If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.
Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.
If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.

WARNING

Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type! Replace the battery with the same type.

WARNING

Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.
Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

Emergency Key

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to an authorized dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The authorized dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

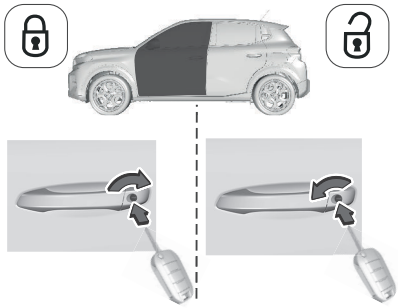
Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, **change the remote control battery**.

In the second case, **reinitialize the remote control**.

Refer to the corresponding sections.



- Insert the key into the door lock.
- Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.

NOTE

If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated when locking with the mechanical key.
If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Front left-hand door

- Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the front or rear of the vehicle to lock or unlock the door.

Other doors

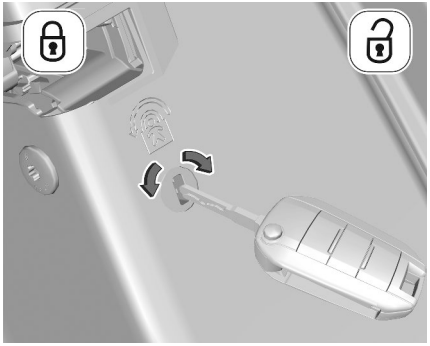
Unlocking

- Pull the interior door opening control.

Locking

- Open the doors.
- For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

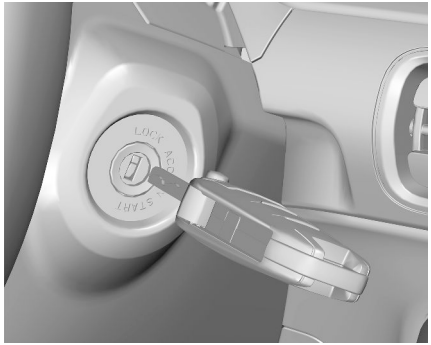
Refer to the corresponding section.



1. **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
2. Insert the key into the socket without forcing it, then turn the latch towards the inside of the door.
3. Remove the key and refit the black cap.
4. Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Reinitialize the remote control

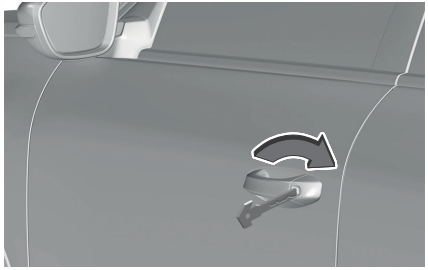
Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialize the remote control ⇨ 41



1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Ignition switch on.
3. Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
4. Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Start



- Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the driver door lock to open the vehicle.



- place the electronic key on on the cupholder in the center console.



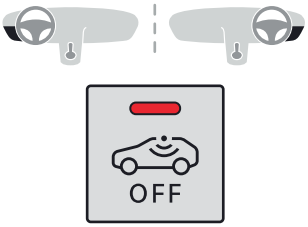
- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- With an automatic gearbox, while in mode P, depress the brake pedal.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Vehicle Security System

Anti-theft Alarm System

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 3 mph (5 km/h)).



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the hood, for example.

Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

NOTE

When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

NOTE

Electric vehicles Depending on version, interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring may be reduced or even suspended during temperature pre-conditioning sequences.

Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

WARNING

Work on the alarm system

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.



- Press on the radio remote control twice within five seconds.

When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator light in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

WARNING

Door, boot or bonnet. If an opening is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- Press the remote control unlocking button.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator light in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

NOTE

After unlocking using the remote control

If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically activated.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

- Presence of an occupant or a pet.
- Slightly open window.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

1. Switch off the ignition and within 3 minutes press the alarm button until its red indicator light is on fixed.
2. Get out of the vehicle.
3. Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator light flashes once every second.

NOTE

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control.

The indicator light in the button goes off.

- Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control.

The red indicator light in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, rapid flashing of the red indicator light in the button informs user that the alarm was triggered during driver absence.
When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.
- Open the door; the alarm is triggered.
- Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm.

The indicator light in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- Lock the vehicle using the key in the front driver door lock.

Automatic activation

(Depending on version)
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, press the unlocking button on the remote control.

Fault

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator light in the button indicates a system malfunction.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Immobilizer

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible. If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a dealer.

Doors

Manual Door Openings

From outside

- After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside

- Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

NOTE

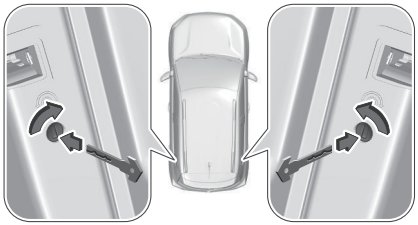
With selective unlocking activated:

- Opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
- Opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Rear Doors Child Locks

The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle.
The red control is located on the edge of each rear door (marked by a label).

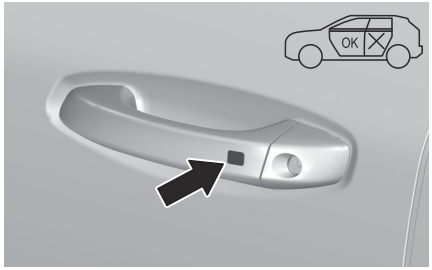
Activation/Deactivation



- To activate, turn the built-in key fully:
  - To the right on the left-hand rear door.
  - To the left on the right-hand rear door.
- To deactivate the child lock, turn the built-in key in the opposite direction.

Passive Entry

(where provided)
The system can identify the presence of an electronic key near the driver's door (and the tailgate) to unlock/lock the driver's door (or the tailgate) without having to press any button on the electronic key.



If the system identifies that the electronic key found is valid, the owner of the key can simply grasp one of the front handles to release the alarm and unlock the door and tailgate opening mechanism.
To lock the door, make sure having the electronic key and stay within the 1.2m operating range of the driver or passenger side door handle.
Press the button on the handle: this will lock all doors and the boot tailgate. Door locking will also activate the alarm as well (where provided).

⚠ WARNING

Do not simultaneously lock and unlock by pulling the handle.

⚠ WARNING

If wearing gloves, or if it has rained and the door handle is wet, the activation sensitivity of the Passive Entry function may be reduced, resulting in a longer reaction time.

Fault

The operation of the recognition system depends on various factors, such as:

- any electromagnetic wave interference from external sources (e.g. mobile phones),
- the charge of the battery in the electronic key
- the presence of metal objects near the key or the vehicle.

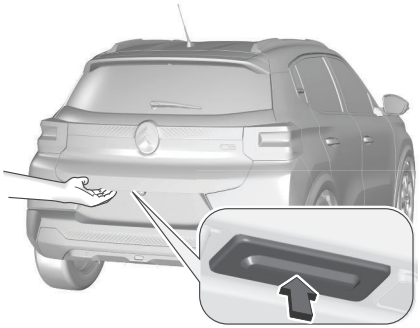
In these cases it is still possible to unlock the doors by using the metal insert in the electronic key

Tailgate Operation

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaus gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Opening the tailgate



- With the vehicle unlocked, press the central tailgate control.
- Lift the tailgate.

⚠ WARNING

The tailgate is not designed to hold a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

Back-up release

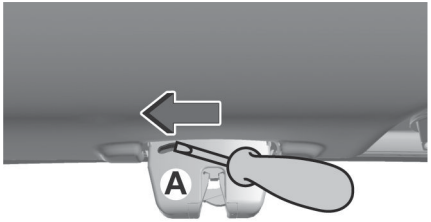
To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.
If the fault persists after closing again, the trunk will remain locked.

NOTE

In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Unlocking

- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the trunk.



- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **(A)** of the lock to unlock the trunk.
- Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the trunk will remain locked.

Windows

Power Windows



1 Left-hand front

2 Right-hand front

3 Right-hand rear

4 Left-hand rear

5 Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats. Locking of the rear doors (depending on version)

Manual operation

- To open/close the window, press/pull the switch; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

Operate for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.
Depending on version, long pushing or pulling: the window moves up or down completely when the switch is released.
Short pushing or pulling: the window moves up or down as long as is operated.

NOTE

Window controls remain operational for approximately 60 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle. After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

Anti-pinch

(Depending on version)
If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

NOTE

Overtaking of the anti-pinch. After triggering the anti-pinch, check that there are no obstacles blocking the movement of the window.
Try to close the window again.
If the window closing is interrupted by the anti-pinch 3 times in a row (max. 10 seconds between each action), the anti-pinch function becomes inoperable.
Without this protection, the window can only be closed manually - risk of injury!

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows



For your children's safety, ignition on or engine on, press control **5** to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator light in the button comes on and a confirmation message is displayed.
The light will remain lit until the controls are reactivated.
The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

Reinitialize the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, overvoltage, or in the event of abnormal window behavior, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialized.

NOTE

Automatic window closing is no longer available, only manual closing is possible. Remote window closing with the electronic key is also no longer available in this case.

The anti-pinch function is inoperable during the following sequence of operations.

For each window:

- Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimeters each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- Continue to pull the control for more than 2 seconds after the window reaches the closed position.

WARNING

If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.
When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.
It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.

Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

Rear Window

Heated Rear Window

The rear screen can be effectively and quickly demisted or defrosted through the function of the Climate System

Windshield

Refer to the **"Climate controls"** section
⇨75

Sun Visor

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.
If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.
A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Mirrors

Manual Outside Mirrors

⚠ WARNING

As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots".
The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Power Outside Mirrors

Electric Adjustment





- Move control **(A)** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **(B)** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return control **(A)** to its central position.

Manual Folding

The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric Folding

Depending on equipment, the door mirrors can be folded electrically.



- From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **(A)** in the central position.
- Pull control **(A)** backwards.
- Lock the vehicle from the outside.

NOTE

If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Electric Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- From inside: with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position and then pull it rearwards.

Activation/Deactivation

The automatic door mirror folding/unfolding function is configured via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Demisting/Defrosting

The demisting/defrosting of the door mirrors works with the demisting/ defrosting of the rear screen.

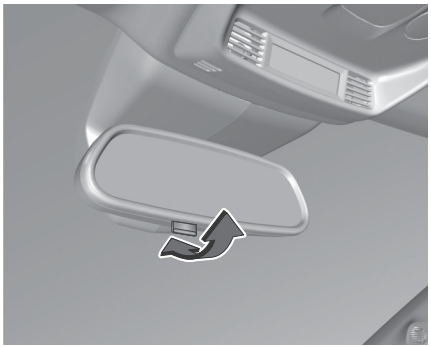
For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Inside Rearview Mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Day/night position



- Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model



The electrochrome system uses a sensor that detects the level of exterior brightness and that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

NOTE

To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged. The system is inoperative if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

Head Restraints

Head Restraints Position

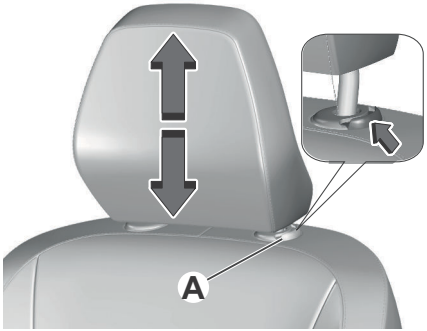
WARNING

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.

The upper edge of the head restraint should be aligned with the top of the head. If this is not possible, set it to the highest position for very tall occupants, or to the lowest position for shorter individuals.

Front Head Restraints

Adjusting the height



Upwards

- Pull the head restraint up to the desired position; it possible to feel the head restraint clicking into position.

Downwards

- Press lug **A** to lower the head restraint.

NOTE

The head restraint is correctly adjusted when its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- Pull the head restraint fully up.
- Press lug **A** to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
- Stow the head restraint securely.

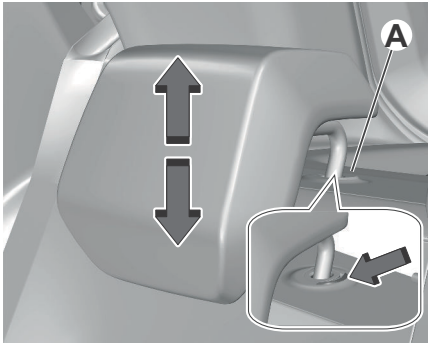
Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push the head restraint fully down.
- Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.
- Adjust the height of the head restraint.

WARNING

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Rear Head Restraints



They have two positions:

- A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - Pull the head restraint fully up.
- A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - Press the lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

Removing a head restraint



- Release the backrest using control **(1)**.
- Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
- Pull the head restraint fully up.
- Press the lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

Refitting a head restraint

- Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.
- Push the head restraint fully down.
- Press the lug **(A)** to release the head restraint and push it down.

WARNING

Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.
The head restraint for the centre seat and those for the outer seats are not interchangeable.

Seats

Front Seat Position

⚠ WARNING

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

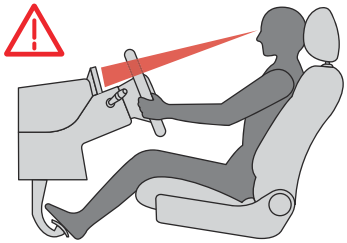
⚠ WARNING

For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

⚠ WARNING

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Correct driving position



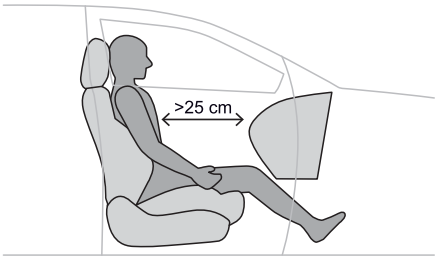
Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- head restraint height.
- seat backrest angle.
- seat cushion height.
- longitudinal seat position.
- steering wheel reach and then height.
- rear view mirror and door mirrors.

ⓘ NOTE

Once these adjustments have been made, check that the "head-up" instrument panel can be viewed correctly over the smaller diameter steering wheel.

Passenger's side



- Sit fully back in the seat with the pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.
- Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that passenger is at a distance of at least 25 cm from the dashboard.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of the head.

Before moving off

- Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.
- Fasten the seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of the shoulder and adjust the lap belt so that it is tightened across the pelvis.
- Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

When driving

Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the 'quarter to three' position, so that it is possible to

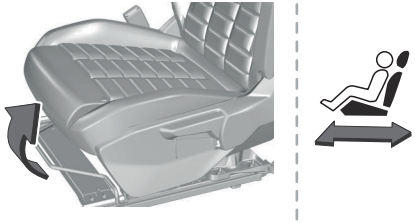
easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving. Always keep your feet on the floor.

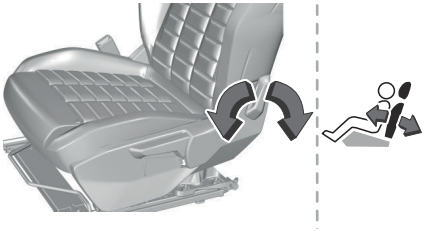
Manual Front Seats adjustment

Longitudinal



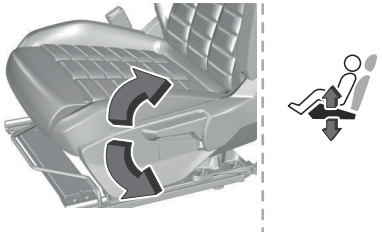
- Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

Backrest angle



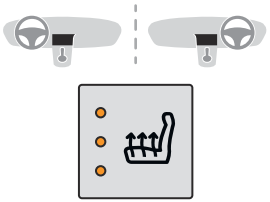
- Push the control backwards and tilt the backrest forwards or backwards to obtain the desired angle.

Height adjustment (driver only)



- Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until to obtain the position required.

Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

1. Press the button corresponding to the seat.
2. Each press changes the heating level; the corresponding number of indicator lights come on.
3. To switch off the heating, press the button until all of the indicator lights are off.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

⚠ WARNING

Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin. There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).
To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

Folding Rear Seats

Folding the backrests

⚠ WARNING

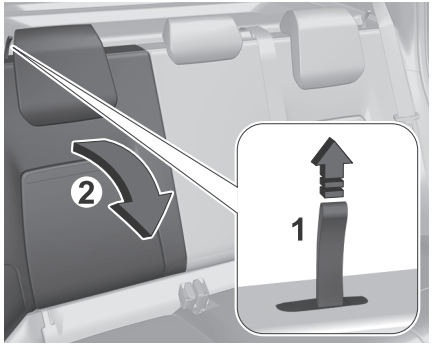
Manoeuvring the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

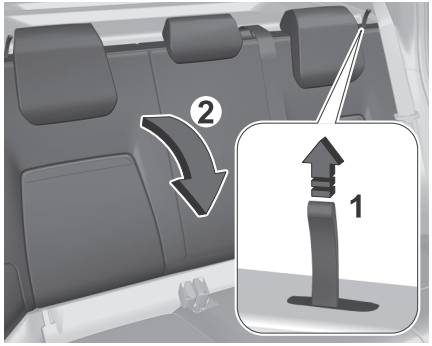
- Lower the head restraints.
- If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).
- Check that the seat belts are free, not engaged in the buckles. Release them so that the backrest can be moved.

ⓘ NOTE

To obtain the flattest possible surface or if there is a load on the backrest, remove the head restraint(s) from the backrest.



2/3-1/3 backrest



One-piece backrest

For versions with 2/3-1/3 backrest:

- Pull the strap **(1)** firmly to release the backrest.
- Guide the backrest **(2)** down to the horizontal position.

For versions with one-piece backrest:

- Pull the two straps **(1)** simultaneously and firmly to release the backrest.
- Guide the backrest **(2)** down to the horizontal position.

ⓘ NOTE

If you are alone to carry out the maneuver, remove the rear shelf, then carry out the operation from the rear of the boot.

Repositioning the backrests

⚠ WARNING

First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

- Put the backrest **(2)** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- Check that the release strap **(1)** has correctly returned to its position.
- Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

⚠ WARNING

Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

Seat Belts

⚠ WARNING

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly. To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly. After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Seat Belts Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Fasten seat belt before each trip.

In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.
The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

Progressive force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, taking their stature into account, thus improving their protection.

⚠ WARNING

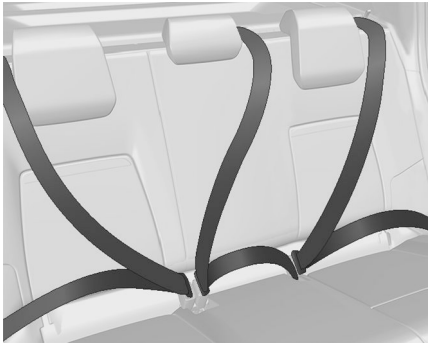
In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front seat belts

Each of the front seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

Fastening

- Pull the strap, then insert the tongue into the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling on the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened alerts



1	Front left seat belt warning light
2	Front right seat belt warning light
3	Rear left seat belt warning light
4	Rear center seat belt warning light
5	Rear right seat belt warning light

If the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened, when the ignition is switched on, the seat belts warning light comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning light (1 to 5) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lights display.

NOTE

If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (**3** to **5** or 7) comes on for around 1 minute.

Above about 12 mph (20 km/h) and for 2 minutes, each warning light corresponding to an occupied seat whose seat belt is unfastened flashes, accompanied by an audible signal.
After these 2 minutes, the corresponding seat warning light remains on until the driver or the front/rear passenger fasten their seat belt.

WARNING

Installation.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible.
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
- must only be used to secure one person.
- must not show signs of tearing or fraying.
- must not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

⚠ WARNING

Recommendations for children.

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

⚠ WARNING

Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a dealer is able to provide.
Have the seat belts checked regularly by a dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by dealers.

Airbags System

Airbag System Introduction

General information

⚠ DANGER

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ DANGER

Adding accessories that change the vehicle frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts, airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

⚠ WARNING

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not affix or attach anything near to or in the exit path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Do not affix or attach anything to:

- The steering wheel and dashboard.
- The seat backrests (e.g. clothing).
- The roof.

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision.
The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system. Electronic detectors record and analyze the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect in these situations.

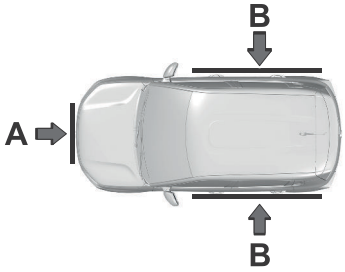
The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

⚠ WARNING

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones



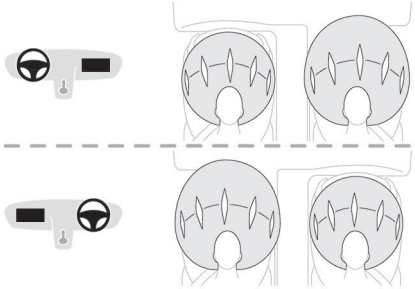
A. Front impact zone

B. Side impact zone

NOTE

When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front Airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

They are deployed, except for the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated[1], in the event of a violent front impact applied to all or part of front impact zone **(A)**.

The front airbag inflates between the chest and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, on the driver's side, and the dashboard, on the passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Lateral airbags

This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **(B)**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the chest of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

Curtain airbags

This system helps provide greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear center passenger) in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side

[1] For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **(B)**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

Airbag System Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights illuminated on the instrument panel.

Contact a Dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

⚠ WARNING

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.
Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.
Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed.
The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work must be carried out only by a STELLANTIS dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Front airbags. Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

⚠ WARNING

Lateral airbags. Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags! All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Curtain airbags.

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, as these help to secure the curtain airbags.

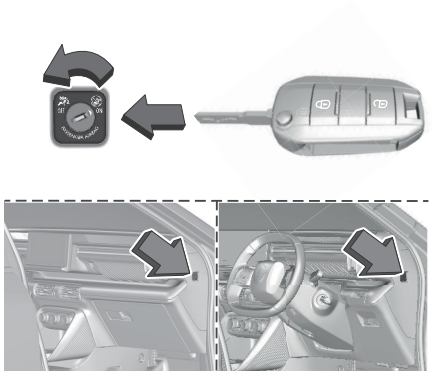
Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation

The front passenger airbag must be set in accordance with the type of Child Restraint System used. Follow the Child Restraints Installation Table ⇨ 37

The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active. The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch in the glove box on the passenger side.

⚠ WARNING

Deactivate the passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the Child Restraints Installation Table.
Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.



Use the ignition key to choose the position:

OFF  Front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator illuminates continuously in the center console

ON  Front passenger airbag is active

Activate/Deactivate the airbag **only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.**



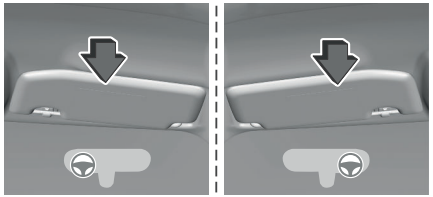
After the ignition is turned on:

- If the control indicator **ON** illuminates for approx. 60 seconds, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.
- If the control indicator **OFF** illuminates, the front passenger airbag system is deactivated. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

Consult a workshop immediately:

- If neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.
- If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system cannot be determined. No person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat.

Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:



DANGER

NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

EN: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.

FR: NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.

ES: NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.

IT: NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

Child Restraints

General recommendations

WARNING

When carrying children in the vehicle, you must install them in a suitable seat. **Never carry a child on your lap.**

WARNING

An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Make sure to comply with the instructions hereinafter and the ones provided with the child seat.

NOTE

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 years old or less than 1.5 meters tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their size or weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Children aged 15 months or less must travel in the "rearward facing" position,**

whether in the front or rear of the vehicle. The use of "rearward facing" seats is recommended for children until the age of 3.

- **Statistically, the safest seats in the vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats**

⚠ WARNING

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials. A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

ⓘ NOTE

Seatbelts

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilize it.
When installing a child seat on a rear seat, ensure that the seat does not interfere with the operation of the seatbelt on the rear center seat.
Ensure that the seatbelt is properly positioned and tighten it or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

⚠ WARNING

Headrests

Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest or a Top Tether system on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

⚠ WARNING

Additional protections.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock".
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Child Restraint Installation on a Front Seat

⚠ WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a "rearward facing" child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**



⚠ WARNING

The front passenger airbag must be activated when installing a forward-facing child seat.



NOTE

Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened**.



Child Restraint Installation on a Rear Seat

Forward-facing or rearward-facing





1. Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
2. Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

Center rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the center rear passenger seat.

Seat-specific Recommendations

WARNING

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

WARNING

Installing a Child Seat with support leg

Ensure that the Support Leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
Never install a seat with support leg on the center rear passenger seat.

WARNING

When the child restraint system is not used, secure it with the seat belt or with the ISOFIX anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it unsecured inside the passenger compartment. In this way, in the event of sudden braking or an accident, it will not cause injuries to the occupants.

WARNING

The head restraint must always be present in the vehicle and fitted if the seat is used by an adult passenger or a child sitting in a restraint system without backrest.

WARNING

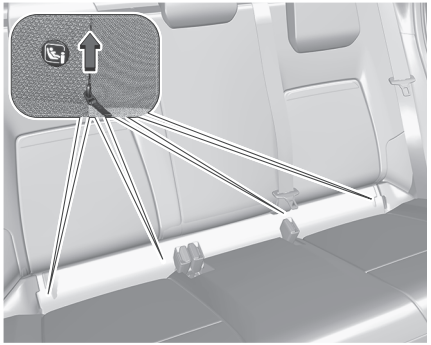
After installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, do not move the seat forwards or back as it could loosen the attachments. Remove the child restraint system to adjust the seat position. Install the child restraint system again once the seat has been adjusted.

Seat Belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a seat belt.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat.

Isofix Anchorage Connectors

Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.
The rear outer seats feature ISOFIX compliant anchorage points.



The anchorage point are located behind zips between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion. They are indicated by the label on the backrest.
Open the zipper to get access to the mountings.

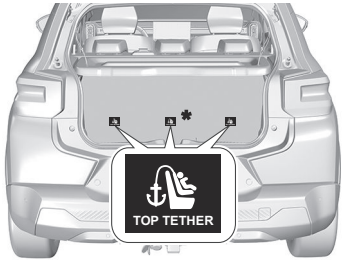
NOTE

When fastening ISOFIX compatible child restraint systems on adjustable passenger seats, first incline the backrest as far as necessary backwards in order to get access to the ISOFIX anchorage connectors.

After the proper fastening of the ISOFIX child restraint system, incline the backrest forward again.

Top Tether anchors

In addition to the ISOFIX rings, Top-tether seats must be secured to an additional ring, located behind the seat.



* Depending on country of sale.
Before installing a Top-Tether seat:

1. Remove and stow the head restraint for the seat before installing the child seat;
2. Install the child seat on ISOFIX mountings;
3. Pass the strap of the Child Seat over the back rest and secure it to the Top-Tether rings;
4. Tighten the strap according to the instructions of the manual provided with the Child Seat.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

i-Size child seats

An i-Size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according to UN Regulation No. 129.
All i-Size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-Size, as indicated in the Child Restraints Installation Table.

NOTE

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX brackets to prevent the seat from tipping forwards in the event of a collision.

i-Size child seats and vehicle seats with i-Size approval are marked with i-Size symbol.

Child Seats Recommended

Size of the child (ECE R129)	Installation type	Child restraint system	Remark
Size: 40 - 85 cm (From birth to 15 months) (Up to 13 kg)	Rearward facing 	**"RÖMER Baby-Safe PRO"**	Recommended with its ISOFIX base (**RÖMER Vario Base 5Z**)
Size: 61- 105 cm (From 3 months to 4 years) (Up to 18 kg)	Rearward facing Size: 61 - 105 cm  Forward facing Size: 76 - 105 cm 	**"RÖMER Dualfix 5Z"**	Installed with its ISOFIX base (**RÖMER Vario Base 5Z**) Rearward facing installation is recommended
Size: 100 - 150 cm (From 3.5 to 12 years) (Up to 36 kg)	Forward facing 	**"RÖMER KidFix Pro"**	Can be installed with or without ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt. **Bought in Stellantis & You, Sales and Services** **We recommend using child seat with the backrest. If the backrest is removed for child over 138 cm, the secure guard must also be removed**

⚠ DANGER

If a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system is not fixed to all three anchorages, it will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously or fatally injured.

NOTE

Please follow the child restraint manufacturers' instructions for installing the appropriate child restraint in the vehicle.

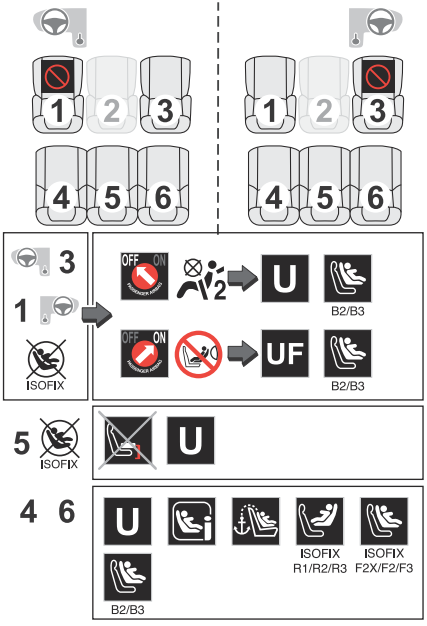
NOTE

For the semi-universal or vehicle-specific child restraint (ISOFIX or belt-type child restraint), refer to the list of vehicles provided in the child restraint user manual.

NOTE

Ensure that the installation location of the child restraint system inside the vehicle is correct.
Refer to the summary table for the installation of child seats.

Child Restraints Installation Location



WARNING

Observe the restrictions and indications in the European Regulation Child Restraints Installation Table.

Key

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated** and associated warning light.

Front passenger airbag **activated** and associated warning light.

U

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved** "**rearward facing**" and/or "**forward facing**" (**U**) for groups **0**, **0+**, **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

UF

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved** "**forward facing**" (**UF**) for groups **1**, **2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

Seat position authorized for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

Seat position authorized for the installation of a "forward facing" **i-Size** child seat.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorizing the installation of an **universal ISOFIX child seat**.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorizing the installation of a "**forward facing**" **universal ISOFIX child seat**.

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.



Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat **for toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full heigh**t child seat.



Booster child seat, using seat belt or **ISOFIX** mountings:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.



ISOFIX "**carrycot**" type child seat:

- **L1**: left-hand facing.
- **L2**: right-hand facing.



Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.



Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the summary table in the **Child restraints installation location table.**

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** as well as the largest **ISOFIX** and **i-Size** child seats on seat positions equipped with **ISOFIX** mountings in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats (b)			**Rear seats (b)**		
	**1**	**3**		**4**	**5**	**6**
	**3**	**1**		**4**	**5**	**6**
Front passenger airbag		Deactivated "OFF" **(c)**	Activated "ON" **(d)**			
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Rearward facing	no	yes **(e) (g)**	no	yes	yes **(h)**	yes
Position compatible with a **universal (a)** child seat Forward facing	no	yes **(f) (g)**	yes **(f) (g)**	yes	yes **(h)**	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Rearward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position compatible with an **i-Size** child seat Forward facing	no	no		yes	no	yes
Position equipped with a **Top Tether** hook	no	no		yes	no	yes
"**Carrycot**" type of child seat (L1 / L2)	no	no		no	no	no

	Seat numbers				
	Front seats (b)		Rear seats (b)		
"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (R1 / R2 / R3)	no	no	R3	no	R3
"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat (F2 / F2X / F3)	no	no	F3	no	F3
"**Booster**" child seat (B2 / B3)	no	B3	B3	no	B3

Rules

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible for **R1**, **R2** and **F2X**, **F2**, **B2**.
- A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible for **R1** and **R2**.
- A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible for **R1**.
- A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible for **F2X** and **F2**.
- A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible for **B2**.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Depending on version, refer to the legislation in force in your country before installing a child in this seat position.

(c) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag MUST be deactivated "**OFF**".

(d) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorized at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated "**ON**"

(e) For a "**rearward facing**" and/or "**forward facing**" universal child seat **(U)** for groups **0, 0+, 1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 40 and 150 cm in size.

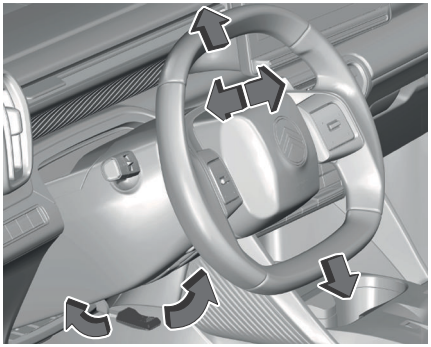
(f) For a "**forward facing**" universal child seat (**UF**) for groups **1, 2** or **3**, or dedicated to children between 76 and 150 cm in size only.

(g) For a seat with height adjustment, adjust the front passenger seat to the highest and fully back longitudinal position.

(h) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the central rear passenger seat.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Adjustment



- When stationary, pull the control to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position in a smooth way.
- Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Steering Wheel Controls

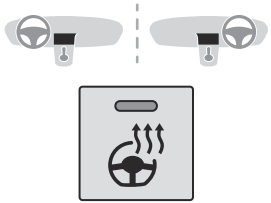
Steering wheel is fitted with many controls, for description refer to ⇨ 88

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

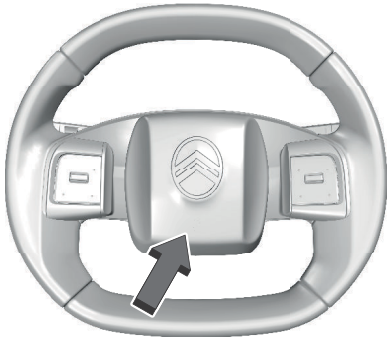
Steering Wheel Heating

(Depending on country of sale) In cold weather, this function heats the circular part of the steering wheel.
It can be activated when the outside temperature is below 20°C.



- With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator light coming on/going out).

Horn



- Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Ignition Switch

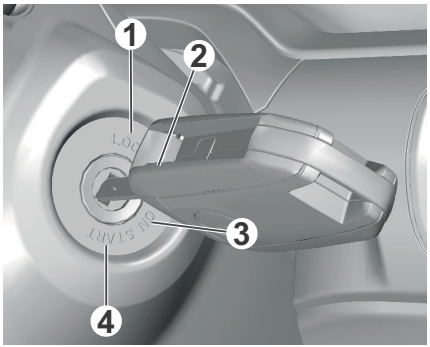
⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the ignition before having completely immobilised the vehicle.
With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

⚠ WARNING

Only leave the vehicle with propulsion system off, parking brake applied and, depending on transmission, first gear engaged or **P** selected.

Key Ignition Switch



It has 4 positions:

1 Stop

Inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.

2 Accessories

Steering column unlocked, use of the vehicle's electric equipment.

3 Ignition

Steering column unlocked, ignition on, engine running.

4 Starting

NOTE

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. It would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or the charging of accessories. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode. The power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

Windshield Wiper And Washer

NOTE

Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windshield and around the wiper arms and blades.

WARNING

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

NOTE

After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

Windshield wipers

- To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain)
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain)
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)
0	Switching off
x1	Single wipe (press down and release).

or

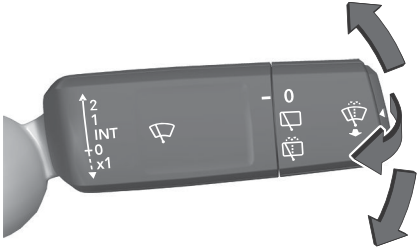
AUTO	Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

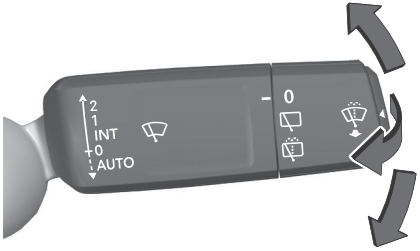
Single wipe

- With AUTO wiping version, pull the wiper control stalk briefly towards steering wheel without going beyond the point of resistance.

Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Automatic windshield wiper

In **AUTO** mode, the windshield wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.

Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top center of the windshield behind the rear view mirror.

⚠ WARNING

Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor.
When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition.
In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

Switching on



- Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

AUTO Depending on version, this indicator light illuminated on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off

Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or set the control stalk to another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).

AUTO Depending on version, this indicator light goes off on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

NOTE

If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Windshield washer

- Pull and hold the wiper control stalk towards steering wheel beyond the point of resistance.

A final wiping cycle is performed when windshield washing ends.

NOTE

The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.
An additional jet is installed below the midpoint of the arm on the driver's side.
Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

NOTE

The screenwash jets are not adjustable. Do not handle them (risk of damage).

⚠ WARNING

To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

Rear Window Wiper And Washer



- Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Off

Intermittent wiping

Rear screen washer and wiper

Special position of the windshield wipers

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windshield.
⇨195

Exterior Lights

Lighting Controls

- To select the main lighting mode: turn the ring up/down to the desired position (depending on version).





Sidelights only

AUTO Automatic illumination of lights/ daytime running lights

Dipped beam headlights

High beam headlights

Headlights

WARNING

Do not look directly into the LED headlights. Risk of eye damage.

NOTE

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help, switch on the headlights.

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator light on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

A fault with a light is signaled by the permanent illumination of this warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Low Beam/High Beam



- Pull the lighting control stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlights.

In lights off and sidelights modes, pull the lighting control stalk to switch the main beam headlights on directly ("headlight flash").

Automatic Lighting

General Recommendations

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windshield.

NOTE

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

WARNING

Maintenance.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

Operation

With the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the number plate lights, sidelights and dipped beam headlights are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver.

They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windshield wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windshield wipers are switched off, the lights are switched off automatically.

Switching on/off



- To activate it, turn the ring to the "**AUTO**" position.
- To deactivate it, turn the ring to any other position.

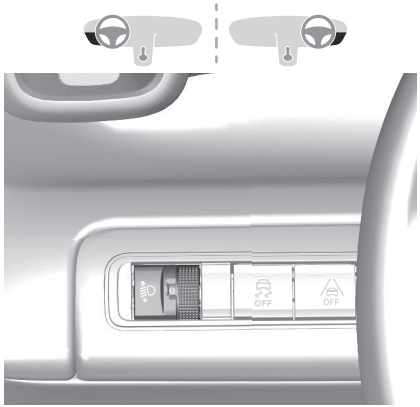
When the function is activated or deactivated, a message is displayed (depending on version).

Fault

In the event of a malfunction of the rain/ sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lights come on and this warning light is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Headlight Height Adjustment

Manual headlight adjustment

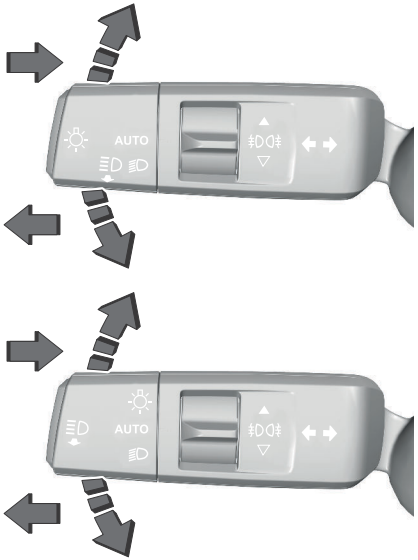


To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of the headlight beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

	(Initial setting)
0.	Driver only or driver + front passenger
1.	5 people
2.	5 people + load in the boot
3.	Driver only + load in the boot
4, 5, 6.	Not used

This information is provided as a guide only. Depending on version, the unused positions may be required.

Direction indicators



- Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

NOTE

If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

Three flashes

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

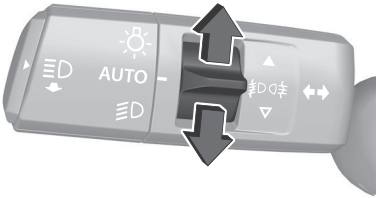
Foglights

The selector automatically returns to its initial position.

When the lights are switched off automatically (with "**AUTO**" position) or when the dipped beam headlights are switched off manually, the foglights and sidelights remain on.

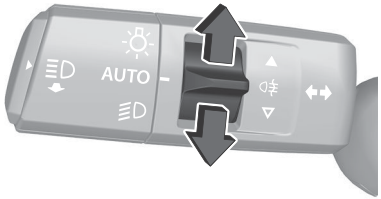
- Push the selector down to switch the foglights off; the sidelights will then switch off

Front foglights and rear foglight (depending on version):



- Push the selector:
  - up a 1st time to switch on the front foglights.
  - up a 2nd time to switch on the rear foglight.
  - down a 1st time to switch off the rear foglight.
  - down a 2nd time to switch off the front foglights.

Rear fog lights (depending on version)**:**



They only work if the dipped or main beam headlights are on.

- Push the selector up/down to turn them on/ off.

The selector automatically returns to its initial position.
When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) the foglights remain on.

WARNING

Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country).
Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

NOTE

Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition. To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring, to the **"AUTO"** position, then to the desired position. They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

NOTE

Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off. When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guideme-home lighting is activated.

NOTE

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlights and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lights have been on for a few minutes.

WARNING

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



NOTE

Travelling abroad

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Daytime Running Lights (DRL)

These lights at the front and rear of the vehicle light up automatically when the engine starts.
They perform the following functions:

- Daytime running lights (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with adequate ambient light).
- Sidelights (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with low ambient light or "Sidelights only" or "Dipped/main beam headlights").

NOTE

In daytime running lamps mode, the light-emitting diodes are brighter.

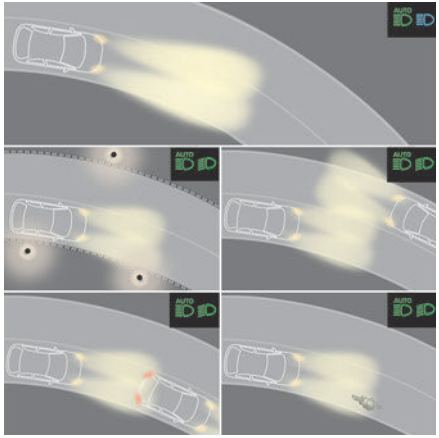
Automatic Headlights Dipping

WARNING

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems.**

Available only on versions equipped with LED technology headlights.

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlights, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windshield.



WARNING

This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

NOTE

The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 28 mph (45 km/h).

When the speed falls below 22 mph (35 km/h), the system is no longer operational.

Activation/Deactivation

The settings are changed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.
The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

NOTE

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

Operation

If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:



- The main beam headlights come on automatically. These indicator lights illuminated on the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlights to be lit:



- The dipped beam headlights remain lit. These indicator lights illuminated on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglights are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall). When the foglights are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favorable again, the function is automatically reactivated.



This indicator light goes out when the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlight beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function.

If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lights were on, the system changes to main beam.
If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lights were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

- To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlights manually between dipped and main beam.

Malfunction



If a malfunction occurs with the system or the camera, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

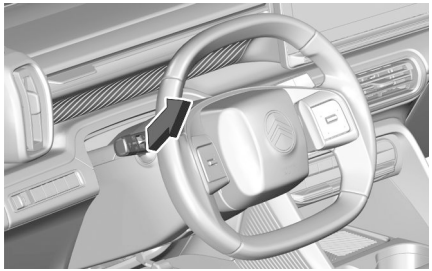
Guide Me Home

Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position and when the light is poor, the sidelights and dipped beam headlights come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

It is possible to activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.

Manual



- With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward steering wheel ("headlight flash") to activate/deactivate the function.

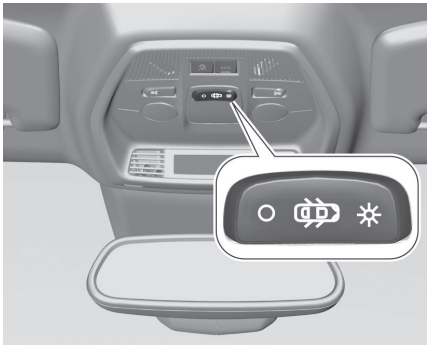
Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

Welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlight illumination" function activated, in poor light, the sidelights and dipped beam headlights come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked. Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Interior Lights

Courtesy Lights



In this position, the courtesy light comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
- when a door is opened.
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked.
- when the ignition is switched on.
- 20 seconds after the last door is closed.

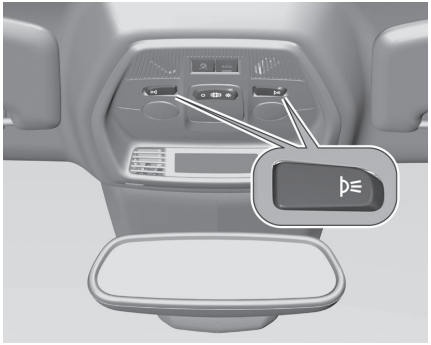
Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In "Permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- With the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

Reading lights



- With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

WARNING

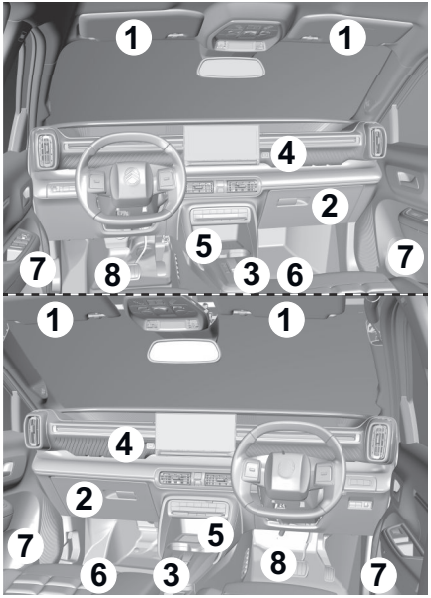
Do not place anything against the courtesy lamps.

Boot Light

It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.
The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

Interior Storage-Interior Fittings



1 Sun visor

2 Glove box

3 12 V accessory socket (max. 120 W)

4 USB socketglove

5 Open storage with double cup holder

6 Front armrest (depending on version)

7 Storage trays

8 Mats (depending on version)

Glove Compartment

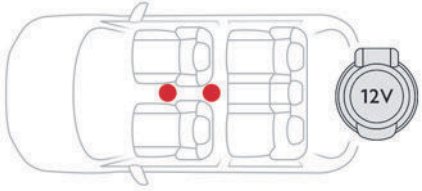
- To open the glove box, lift the handle.

With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

12V Power Outlets



- Plug in a 12 V accessory (with a maximum rated power of 120 W) using a suitable adapter.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging the accessory.

⚠ WARNING

The connection of an electrical device not approved by STELLANTIS, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

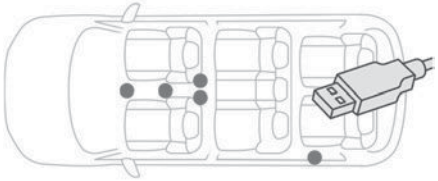
USB Ports

These symbols determine the type of use of a USB socket:

Power supply and recharging.

Likewise, plus exchange of multi-media data with the audio system.

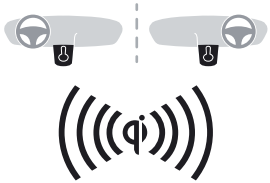
Likewise, plus use of smartphone applications with the touch screen.



Depending on equipment, the vehicle is fitted with:

- One or two USB sockets on the dashboard.
- One USB socket on the center console.
- One or two USB sockets on the 2nd row.

Wireless Phone Charger



This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.
The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.

The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.

Charging

- With the charging area clear, place a device in its center.



When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator light lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

⚠ WARNING

The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged
- Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



⚠ WARNING

When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

Checking operation

The state of the indicator light allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator light	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not properly centered in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.



If the indicator light is fixed orange:

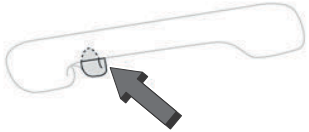
- remove the device, then place it back in the center of the charging zone.

or

- remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system 3 checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

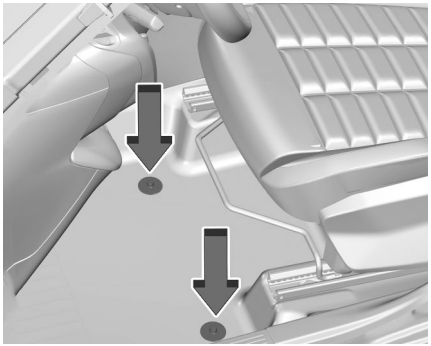
Clothes Hooks



They are located above each rear door.

Floor Mats

Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

Removing/refitting

- To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
- Check that the mat is secured correctly.

WARNING

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

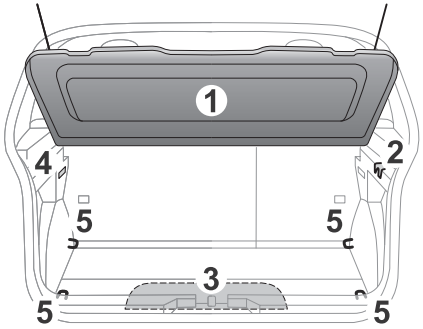
The use of mats not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

Load Compartment

NOTE

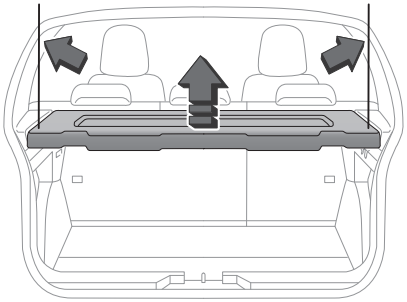
Transporting long or voluminous objects.
Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors locked.
Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h), the sound of the locks rebounding will be heard and an alert will be displayed.
Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 3 mph (5 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Boot fittings



1	Rear shelf
2	Hooks
3	Storage box
4	Lighting
5	Stowing rings

Rear shelf



To remove the shelf:

- Unhook the two cords.
- Gently raise the shelf, then remove it.

There are several ways of storing it:

- Either upright behind the front seats.
- Or flat on the bottom of the boot.

Hooks

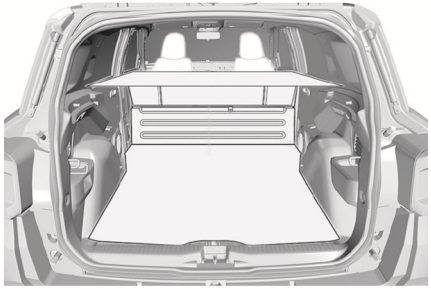
They are used to hang shopping bags.

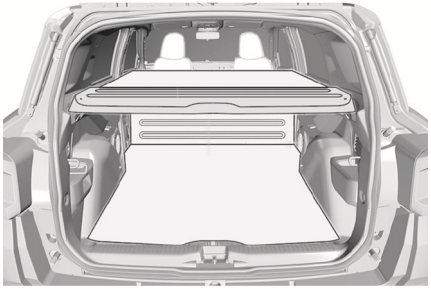
WARNING

Take care to only hang lightweight bags.

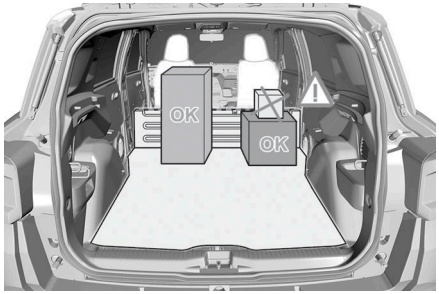
Rear shelf (Van)





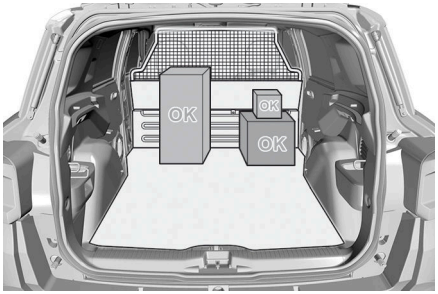


The rear shelf supplements the existing shelf to conceal the interior of the vehicle.

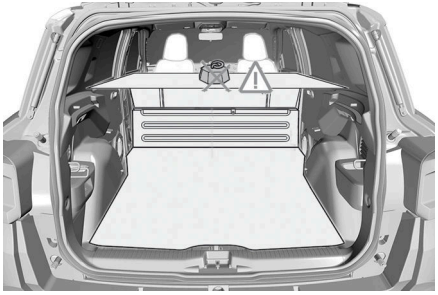


⚠ WARNING

Do not place object above the load retaining partition



If the vehicle is equipped with a safety grille, objects can be placed above the load retaining partition.



⚠ WARNING

Do not place hard or heavy object on the rear shelf.
They can become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or impact.

To access the spare wheel on van versions:

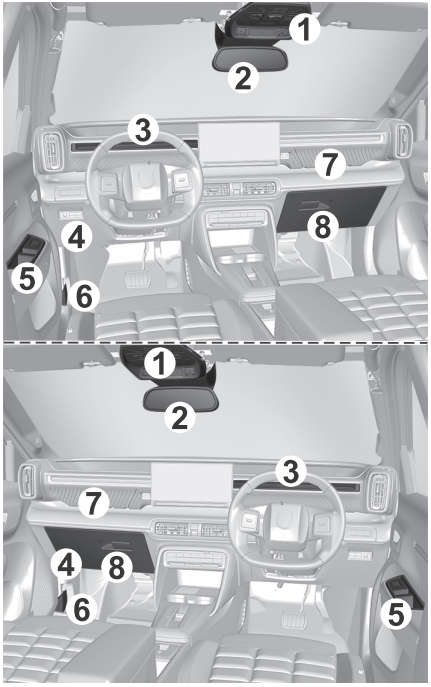
- Remove the storage well.
- Lift the hinged floor.
- Remove the chock.

DASHBOARD INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROL

Instrument Panel Overview

Instrument Panel

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of certain elements may vary, depending on the version or trim level.



1 Courtesy light/Front reading lights
Emergency and assistance call buttons
Sunroof
Warning lights display for seat belts and front passenger airbag

2 Interior rear view mirror

3 Instrument panel

4 Fusebox

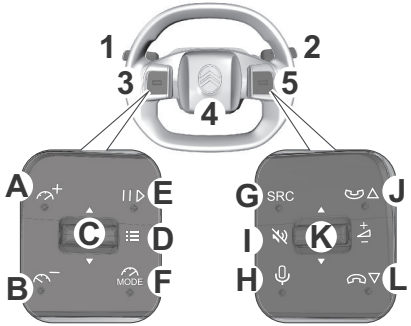
5 Electric windows
Electric door mirrors

6 Hood release

7 Front passenger airbag

8 Glove box

Steering Wheel Cluster Controls



A Increase the speed setting Activate the Speed limiter or Cruise control

B Decrease the speed setting Activate the Speed limiter or Cruise control

C Up/down: navigation through the menus of the instrument panel/settings

D Validate the selection in the menus of the instrument panel/settings

E Pause/Reactivate the Speed limiter or Cruise control with the speed setting saved

F Select/Deselect the Speed limiter Select/Deselect the Cruise control

G Select an audio source

H Voice commands

I Mute the volume

J Short press: change to next stored radio station/change to next song/accept an incoming call

K Increase/decrease the volume

L Short press: change to previous stored radio station/change to previous song/ reject a call

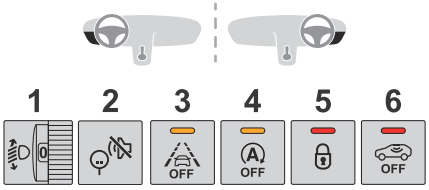
1 External lighting controls/Direction indicators

2 Wiper controls/Windshield Washer/Trip computer

3 Speed limiter/Cruise control/Menus and settings

4 Horn

5 Audio system setting controls and phone



1 Headlights beam height adjustment

2 Press and hold: deactivation of the speed limit information audible warning / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

3 Lane keeping assist

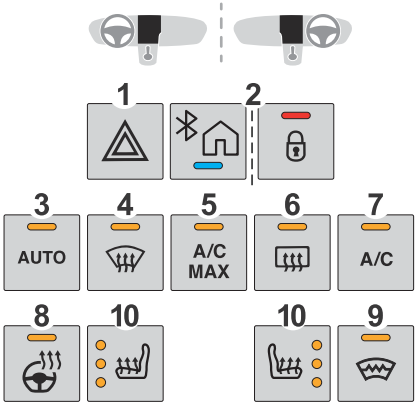
4 Stop & Start (ICE)/e-Auto mode (MHEV)

5 Central locking (with Smartphone Station)

6 Alarm (depending on equipment)

Central Panel Controls

(with automatic air conditioning)



1 Hazard warning lights

2 Bluetooth® connection and access to the smartphone (with Smartphone Station)
or
Central locking (with touch screen)

3 Automatic AC

4 Front demisting/defrosting

5 Maximum AC

6 Rear window demisting/defrosting

7 AC (Air conditionning)

8 Heated steering wheel

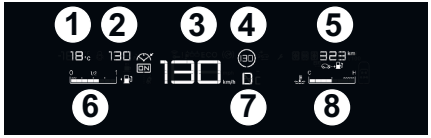
9 Heated windshield

10 Heated seats

Instrument Cluster

LCD Instrument cluster

ICE/Hybrid 48 V version



BEV version



1 External Temperature (°C or °F)

2 Remaining range (miles or km)

3 Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)

4 Cruise control/speed limiter settings
Display of speed limit signs

5 Current consumption
Percentage or the current journey travelled in all-electric driving mode (BEV)
Total distance recorder (miles or km)

6 Fuel gauge (ICE/MHEV)
Charge level indicator (BEV)

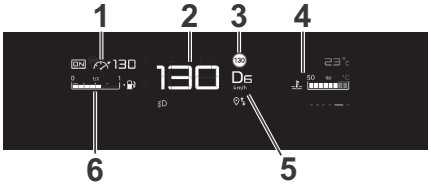
7 Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear)
Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox

Driving mode selected (other than **"Normal"** mode)

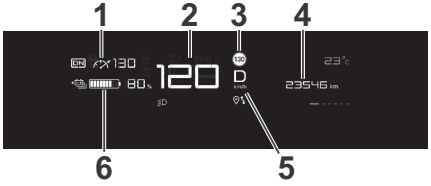
8 Coolant temperature indicator (°C) (ICE/MHEV)
Power indicator (BEV)

Matrix instrument cluster

ICE/Hybrid 48 V version



BEV version



1 Cruise control/Speed limiter settings

2 Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)

3 Display of speed limit signs

4 Matrix display

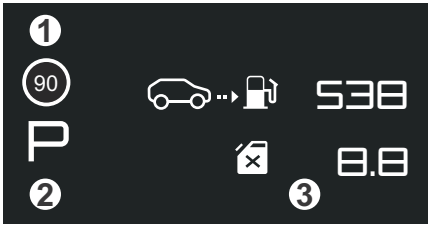
5 Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear)
Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox

Driving mode selected (other than **"Normal"** mode)

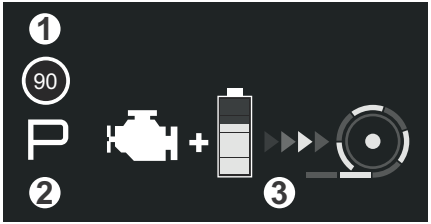
6 Fuel Gauge (ICE/MHEV)
Battery level (BEV)

Display screen

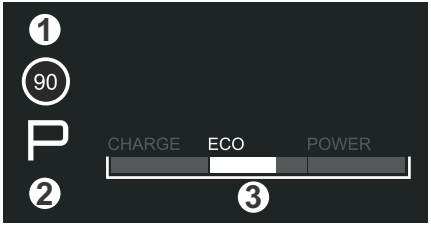
ICE or MHEV



MHEV



BEV



1 Display of speed limit signs

2 Gear shift indicator (arrow and recommended gear) Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox (ICE or MHEV) Drive selector position (BEV)

3 Display area:

- Outside temperature (°C or °F).
- Total distance recorder (miles or km).
- Trip A or B with time and distance traveled (miles or km).
- Remaining range (miles or km).
- Current consumption (mpg or l/100km).
- Power indicator (MHEV or BEV).
- Energy flow (MHEV).
- Warning and status messages.

Odometer

The total distance recorder measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

NOTE

When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration application, with the vehicle stationary.

NOTE

The total distance recorder is only accessible from the trip computer.

For more information on the **Trip computer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed (mph or km/h).

Power indicator

The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle.
There are 3 zones:



For MHEV version

POWER **High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.**

The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

ECO **Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**

The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style.

CHARGE **Energy recovery for recharging the traction battery.**

The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your

foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

NOTE

When the ignition is switched on and before the engine is started, the power indicator only displays **"OFF"**.

For BEV version

CHARGE Traction battery charging during deceleration and braking.

ECO Moderate energy consumption and optimized driving range.

POWER Energy consumption by the drive train during acceleration.

NEUTRAL When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's electric drive train neither consumes nor generates energy; after sweeping over the indicator, the cursor returns to its "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

NOTE

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator, which moves to the "neutral" position: between **ECO** and **CHARGE**.

Charge level indicator (BEV)

The traction battery's actual charge level and the remaining range are displayed continuously when the vehicle is started.

NOTE

With the ignition off, opening the driver's door activates the indicator.

Associated warning lights

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level:

1st level: Reserve



The state of charge of the traction battery is low.
Steady, accompanied by an audible signal.

- View the remaining range on the instrument panel.
- Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

2nd level: Critical



Steady.
This telltale can appear in two cases:

1 The state of charge of the traction battery is critical. Engine power gradually decreases and the vehicle must be put in charge.

2 The engine is becoming hot (strong slopes or accelerations) and power will decrease. Risk the vehicle may stop. Vehicle will need to cool in order to continue.

- Put the vehicle on charge.

WARNING

The remaining range is no longer calculated. The drive train power gradually decreases.

The heating and air conditioning are switched off (even if the thermal comfort consumption indicator is not at the "**ECO**" level).

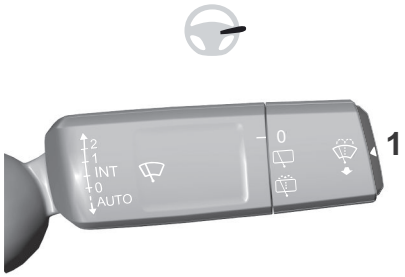
Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (e.g. range, average consumption, average speed, distance traveled).

Information display

Details are displayed successively.

- Trip mileage.
- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Stop & Start time counter.
- Information from the speed limit recognition system.



- Press the button located on the end of the **wiper control stalk (1)**.

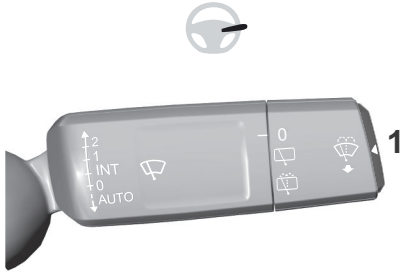
End of trip page

(Depending on version)
When the ignition is switched off, the instrument panel automatically displays an additional page of the trip computer that recapitulates information about the last trip.
The end of trip page contains the following information:

- Range.
- Trip time.
- Distance traveled.
- Percentage of the current journey traveled in all-electric driving mode (MHEV).
- Average consumption.

Trip reset

The reset is performed when the trip counter is displayed.



- Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** (**1**) for more than 2 seconds.

Definitions

Range

(miles or km)
(Traction battery charge level percentage) (BEV)



Distance that can still be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometers) traveled) (ICE).

Actual traction battery charge level and remaining range (BEV).
This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.

For ICE version

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.
After filling with at least 5 liters of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).
Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

For BEV version

Two successive alert levels indicate that the energy available has dropped to a low level.
For more information on the **Indicators**, and in particular the **Charge level indicator** ⇨ 60

Current consumption

(depending on version)
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (BEV)

Calculated during the last few seconds.
This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average consumption

(depending on version)
(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)
(miles/kWh or kWh/100 km or km/kWh) (BEV)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

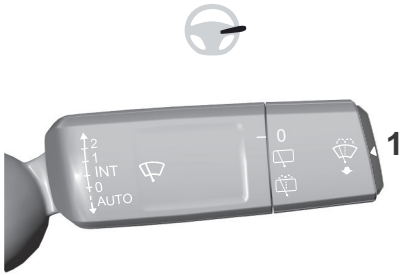
(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If the vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

Configuration menu

With LCD instrument panel

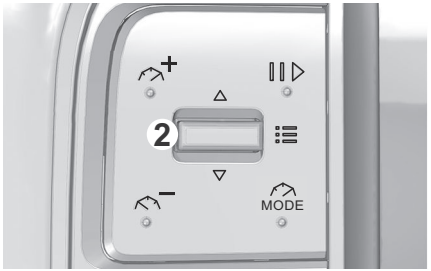


- With ignition on or engine running, make a short press on the button **(1)** on the end of the wiper control stalk.

To access the different menus:

- Odometer
- Trip A / Reset: press and hold
- Trip B / Reset: press and hold
- Range
- Amount of fuel consumption (ICE) / Amount of energy consumption (BEV) / Reset: press and hold

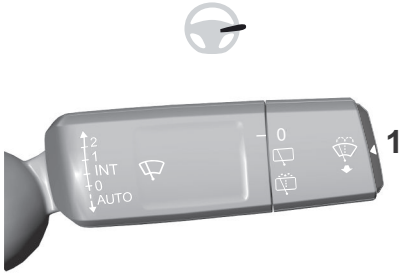
1. With the ignition on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel cluster control left, then press up or down through the different menus.
2. Once on a menu, press on the thumbwheel again.



To access the menu settings:

- Tire pressure monitoring system / Reset: press and hold
- Brightness level
- Unit selection
- Speed limit change notification
- Driver Attention Alert
- Active Safety Brake
- Privacy
- Dual maintenance (distance and time remaining)
- With the Accessories mode on, press on the thumbwheel on the steering wheel cluster control left:
  - to display the service reminder
  - for 10 seconds to reset the service indicator

With matrix instrument



- With ignition on or engine running, make a short press on the button **(1)** on the end of the wiper control stalk.

To access the different menus:

- Odometer
- Trip A / Reset: press and hold
- Trip B / Reset: press and hold
- Range / Amount of fuel consumption (ICE or MHEV) / Amount of energy consumption (BEV)
- Gauge
- Flow page (MHEV)

1. With the ignition on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel cluster control left, then press up or down through the different menus.
2. Once on a menu, press on the thumbwheel again, then press up or down through the different the sub-menus.



To access the different menus:

- Driver Assistant
  - Auto High Beam
  - Active Safety Brake
  - Speed Change Alert
  - Driver Attention Alert
  - Tire pressure monitoring system / Reset: press and hold
- User Settings
  - Language Selection
  - Unit Selection
  - Gauge Selection
  - Brightness Level
  - Ambient Level
  - Privacy
  - Dual maintenance (distance and time remaining)

NOTE

The selection of the display language in the Instrument panel is independent from the infotainment touch screen. Refer to the "Infotainment" section to change the touchscreen language.

1. Once on a sub-menu, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** again to access the sub-menu settings.
2. With the Accessories mode on, press on the thumbwheel **(2)** on the steering wheel cluster control left:
   - to display the service reminder
   - for 10 seconds to reset the service indicator

Warning and indicator lights

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lights inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lights) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lights). Certain lights light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colors.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a light may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows to determine

whether the situation is normal or whether a failure has occurred: refer to the description of each indicator light for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lights come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lights should go off as soon as the engine is started.
For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

Overview

If a red or orange warning light comes on, there may be failure which needs further investigation.
The following severity levels indicate the appropriate action to take when a control indicator illuminates or flashes.

1: only for information

2: information and warning

3: seek the assistance of a workshop

4: stop engine, leave vehicle and seek the assistance of a workshop

5: have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop

Red warning and indicator lights

Major failure - Stop The Vehicle



Steady, associated with another warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious failure with the engine, braking system, power steering or automatic gearbox or a major electrical failure has been detected.

Carry out and then (**4**).

Traction battery overheating (MHEV or BEV)



Steady, combined with the STOP warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The traction battery's temperature is too high.

Carry out (**4**).

Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.

Traction battery malfunction (MHEV or BEV)



Steady, combined with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.
The traction battery has a failure.

Carry out (**4**).

Engine oil pressure (ICE or MHEV)



Steady.
There is a failure with the engine lubrication system.

Carry out (**3**) and then (**4**).

Maximum coolant temperature



Steady.
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Carry out (**3**), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (**4**).

System malfunction (MHEV or BEV)



Steady.
A failure has been detected in the system (electric motor or traction battery).

Carry out (**5**) and then (**4**).

Cable connected (BEV)



Steady when the ignition is switched on.
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.



Steady when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.
Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

12 V battery charge



Steady.
The battery charging circuit has a failure (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).

Carry out (**4**).

If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilize the vehicle:

- With the automatic gearbox or drive selector, fit the chock against one of the wheels.
- With the manual gearbox, engage a gear.

Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out.

Power steering



Steady.
The power steering has a failure.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (**3**).

Manual parking brake



Steady.
The parking brake is applied or not properly released.

Braking



Steady.
The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (**2**), then top up with fluid that complies with the Manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (**4**).





Steady.
The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.
Carry out (**2**) and then (**4**).

Electric parking brake (MHEV or BEV)



Steady.
The electric parking brake is applied.



Flashing.
Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (**3**): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**.

Switch off the ignition and carry out (**4**).

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Steady or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.
A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

Driver Attention Warning by Camera (Drowsiness alert)



If driver drowsiness is detected by camera by driving above 65 km/h, a light and an audible signal is emitted (according to the continuos eye closures duration).
(2)

Orange warning and indicator light

Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor failures, for which there is/ are no specific warning light(s), have been detected.
Identify the cause of the failure using the message displayed on the instrument panel.
It may be possible to deal with some failures, such as changing the battery in the remote control.

For other failures, such as with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), carry out (**3**).



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major failures, for which there is/ are no specific warning light(s), have been detected.

Identify the cause of the failure using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (**3**).

Malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".



The vehicle cannot be immobilized with the engine running.

If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control is faulty.
The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of a failure with the control.

Carry out (**3**).



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Parking brake failure**".



The electric parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.
When stationary, to immobilize the vehicle:

- Pull the electric parking brake control and hold it for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator light illuminates on the instrument panel.

If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:

- Park on a level surface.
- With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
- With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, select mode **P**, then place the supplied chock against one of the wheels.

Then carry out (**3**).

Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)



Steady.
The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated.

If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- Start the engine.
- Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- Take the foot fully off the brake pedal.
- Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- Release the control.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.
- Release the control and the brake pedal.

Power steering



Steady.
A minor failure in the power steering has been detected.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (**3**).

Engine self-diagnostics system (ICE or MHEV)



Steady.
A major engine failure has been detected.
Carry out (**3**) and then (**4**).



Steady.
A minor engine failure has been detected.



Carry out (**3**).



Flashing.
The engine management system has a failure.

There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.
You **must** carry out (**2**).



Steady.
The emissions control system has a failure.

The warning light should go off when the engine is started.

Low fuel level (ICE or MHEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

When it first comes on, there remains **approximately 5 liters of fuel** in the tank (reserve).

Until the fuel level is topped up, this alert will be repeated every time the ignition is switched on, with increasing frequency as the fuel level decreases and approaches zero.
Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.

Never drive until completely empty, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

Low traction battery level (BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal.
The state of charge of the traction battery is low.

View the remaining range.
Put the vehicle on charge as soon as possible.

Tortoise mode with limited driving range (BEV)



Steady.
This telltale can appear in two cases:

1. The state of charge of the traction battery is critical. Engine power gradually decreases and the vehicle must be put on charge.
2. The engine is becoming hot (strong slopes or accelerations) and power will decrease. Risk the vehicle may stop. Vehicle will need to cool in order to continue.

If the warning lamp remains lit, carry out (**2**).

Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake



Flashing.
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

For more information, refer to the **Collision Risk Alert** ⇨148
and to the **Active Safety Brake** ⇨149



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.
The system has been deactivated via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.



Steady.
The system has a fault.

If this warning light comes on after the engine is switched off and then restarted, carry out (**3**).



Steady, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.



Steady.
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.

Road signs recognition



Temporarily on.
The speed limit change sound has been deactivated.



Steady.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Lane keeping assist



Flashing.
Vehicle is about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).



Steady.
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.



Steady.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).

Driver Attention Warning (Distraction detection)



Steady.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).



Steady, accompanied by the display of the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**".

The sensor is masked.
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Clean the front camera.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Steady.
The anti-lock braking system has a fault.

The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (**3**).

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Steady.
The system is deactivated.

The indicator light in the corresponding button is on.
The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).
At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.



Flashing.
DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Steady.
The DSC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).

Hill start assist



Steady, accompanied by the message "**Anti roll-back system failure**".



The system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).

Under-inflation



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
The pressure in one or more tires is too low.

Check the pressure of the tires as soon as possible.
Reinitialize the detection system after adjusting the pressure.





Under-inflation warning light flashing then fixed and Service warning light fixed.
The tire pressure monitoring system is faulty.
Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored.

Check the tire pressures as soon as possible and carry out (**3**).

Parking sensors



Flashing.
The system detects an obstacle.





Steady, associated with the Service warning light, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
At least one of the system's sensors has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).



Steady, only the Service warning light.
Another type of system malfunction occurs.

Carry out (**3**).

Airbags





Steady, associated with the Service warning light and accompanied by the display of a message.
One of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners is faulty.

Carry out (**3**).

Front passenger airbag (ON)



Steady.
The front passenger airbag is activated.

The control is set to the "**ON**" position.

In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!

Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Steady.
The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

The control is set to the "**OFF**" position.

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a failure with the airbags (Airbags warning light on).

Stop & Start (ICE)



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.
The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.
Reactivate the system via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.



Steady.
The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:

- below 0°C
- above +35°C.



Flashing then steady, accompanied by a message.
The system has a fault.

Carry out (**3**).

e-Auto mode (MHEV)



Steady, accompanied by the display of a message.
The e-Auto mode has been deactivated manually.

The petrol engine will not switch off at the next release of the accelerator pedal or at the next traffic stop.
Reactivate the mode via the instrument panel, using the steering-mounted controls.

Automatic headlight dipping



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.
A function or camera malfunction is detected.

Rear foglight



Steady.
The light is on.

Green warning and indicator lights

Stop & Start (ICE)



Steady.

When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into **STOP** mode.



Flashing temporarily.
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or **START** mode is automatically triggered.

Vehicle ready to drive (BEV)



Steady, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive and the thermal comfort systems are available.
The indicator light goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and illuminates again when the vehicle stops moving.
The indicator light will go out when the engine is switched off and exit the vehicle.

Automatic wiping



Steady.
Automatic windshield wiping is activated.

Direction indicators



Flashing with audible signal.
The direction indicators are on.

Daytime running lights/Sidelights



Steady.
With adequate ambient light, the daytime running lights are on.

With inadequate ambient light, the sidelights are on.

Front foglights



Steady.
The front foglights are on.

Automatic headlight dipping



Steady.
The function has been activated via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.



The lighting control stalk ring is in the "**AUTO**" position.

Dipped beam headlights



Steady.
The dipped beam headlights are on.

Blue warning and indicator lights

Main beam headlights

Steady.
The main beam headlights are on.

Black/white warning and indicator lights

Foot on the clutch (ICE)

Steady.
Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Foot on the brake (MHEV or ICE)

Steady.
Insufficient or no pressure on the brake pedal.

With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of mode P on an automatic gearbox or a drive selector.

Pedestrian horn (MHEV or BEV)

Steady.
Horn fault detected.

Carry out (**3**).

Door(s) open

Steady, associated with a message identifying the access.
A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed less than 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Steady, associated with a message identifying the access, accompanied by an audible signal.
A door or the tailgate is not properly closed (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

Lane departure warning

Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.
A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.

Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory.

Steady, accompanied by an onscreen message.
The system has a failure.

Stay alert and drive carefully, then carry out (**3**).

Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

- In zone **(A)**, the temperature is correct.
- In zone **(B)**, the temperature is too high. The associated warning light and the **STOP** warning light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

NOTE

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and/or time (months or days).
The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.
The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

NOTE

The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.
In accordance with the vehicle's maintenance plan, the service may consist of either:

- A yearly visit.
- A complete service.

Service spanner

On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.
Between 1,860 and 620 miles (3,000 and 1,000 km) or 60 and 21 days remain before the next service is due.

Steady, when the ignition is switched on.
The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km) or 21 days.
Have the vehicle serviced very soon.

Service spanner flashing

Flashing then steady, when the ignition is switched on.
The servicing interval has been exceeded.
Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have serviced your vehicle yourself:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. With the Accessories mode on, press the button on the steering wheel to display the menus on the instrument panel.
3. Once the desired menu has been reached, press and hold the button to reset.



A countdown begins.

- When the display indicates "**0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

Reminder of the service information

The service information can be accessed at any time.

- Press this button on the steering wheel.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)
On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information.

NOTE

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL OK**" or by the message "**Oil level correct**" (depending on the instrument panel).

Low oil level

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL**" or by the message "**Oil level incorrect**" (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning light and an audible signal.
If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
Checking Fluids Level ⇨191

Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the display of "**OIL_ _**" or by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" (depending on the instrument panel), accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning light and an audible signal.
Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored.If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.For more information on **Maintenance And Vehicle Care**, refer to the corresponding section.

Distance recorders

Total distance recorder

The total distance recorder measures the total distance traveled by the vehicle since its initial registration.
With the ignition on, the total distance is displayed at all times. It remains displayed for 30 seconds after switching off the ignition. It is displayed when the driver's door is opened, and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

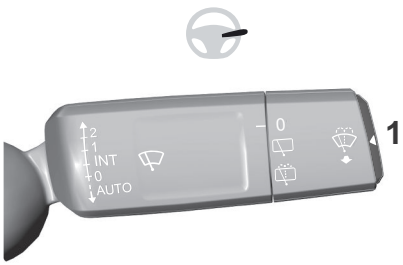
NOTE

When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance units (miles or km): the displayed speed must be in the local country's official unit (mph or km/h).
The unit is changed via the screen's configuration application, with the vehicle stationary.

Trip distance recorder

This measures the distance traveled since it was last reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



- With the ignition on, press successively the button on the end of the wiper control stalk (**1**).
- Once the correct menu is displayed, make a long press to reset to zero.

Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted manually to suit the ambient light level.

- With the lights on, adjust the brightness of the lighting via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

For more information on the **Configuration menu**, refer to the corresponding section.

Climate Controls

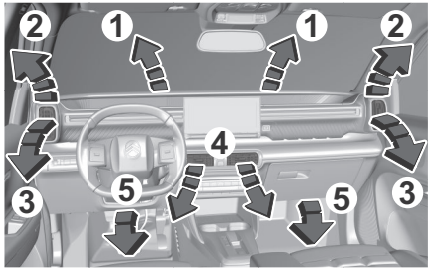
Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windshield, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The controls are grouped together on the center console panel.
The demisting/defrosting controls for the windshield and the rear screen are located below the touch screen, or on the center console panel located below the audio system.

Air distribution



1 Windshield demisting/defrosting vents

2 Front side window demisting/defrosting vents

3 Front side window demisting/defrosting vents

4 Adjustable and closable central air vents

5 Air outlets to the front footwells

Advice

NOTE

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

WARNING

Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!

If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

NOTE

Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

NOTE

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

NOTE

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode (where provided). The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the corresponding system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment. For more information, refer to the corresponding section.

Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control

This mode allows the windshield and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



- Depending on equipment, turn the knob or press this button to activate/ deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator light).

The mode automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow, air intake and distributes ventilation optimally to the windshield and side windows.

NOTE

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

WARNING

In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windshield around the camera. Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control

This demisting/defrosting only works with the engine running.
Depending on version, it also demists/defrosts the door mirrors.



- Press this button to activate/ deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator light coming on/ switching off).

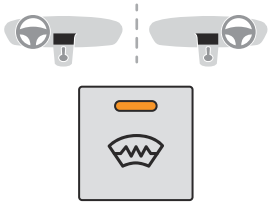
The function can be activated whatever the outside temperature may be.
The period of operation depends on the outside temperature.
Demisting/defrosting therefore switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.

Heated windshield



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windshield, as well as the area alongside the left-hand windshield pillar.
Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windshield wiper blades when they are frozen to the windshield and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windshield wipers.

Switching on/off



- With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator light).

The function is activated when the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically when the engine is switched off.

Temperature preconditioning (BEV and automatic AC)

This function allows to program the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C or 23°C depending on version) before to enter in the vehicle, on the days and at the times chosen.
This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

Programming

The programming is carried out from

- a smartphone via the **MyCitroën App** application
- via the central screen by selecting "**Vehicle settings / Delayed charging**" and via the push on the charging flap.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately **30** minutes before the programmed time.

NOTE

Each one is saved in the system.
Several programms can be defined.
To optimise the driving range, it's recommended to starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.

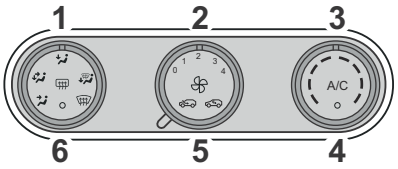
NOTE

The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off**, the drive selector is in **Parking mode**, the **windows are closed** and the **vehicle is locked**.
- The function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 30%.
- When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring program is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature preconditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the program will be deactivated.

Manual climate control system



The heating/manual air conditioning operate in Accessories mode and when the engine is running.

1 Air distribution adjustment

2 Air flow adjustment

3 Temperature adjustment

4 AC on/off

5 Recirculation of interior air

6 Rear window demisting / defrosting

AC On-Off Control

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:

- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increases the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.
- Press button **(4)** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

NOTE

Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.
To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

NOTE

The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

Recirculation Control

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windshield and side windows.
The recirculation of interior air allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from polluted air in areas of heavy traffic and inside tunnels.

NOTE

When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

- Rotate the selector **(5)** to allow the interior air recirculation (right) or the intake of exterior air (left).

WARNING

Avoid the prolonged recirculation of interior air in order to ensure a good supply of fresh air and reduce the risk of misting (especially when several passengers are on board or when the air is cold/damp, etc.).

Temperature Control

- Turn the knob **(3)** from blue (cold) to red (hot).

Adjusting the air flow

- Turn the thumbwheel **(2)** to obtain a sufficient air flow to ensure your comfort.

NOTE

If the air flow control is in the **minimum** position (system deactivated), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

Adjusting the air distribution


Central and side air vents


Central and side air vents and footwells


Footwells

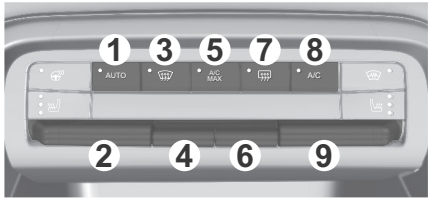

Windshield and side windows and footwells


Windshield and side windows

- Turn the knob **(1)** to select the desired air outlet.

Automatic climate control system

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls can be accessed with the ignition on.
With the air conditioning on, regulation of temperature and interior air recirculation are controlled manually.



1 Automatic AC on/off

2 Temperature adjustment

3 Front demisting / defrosting

4 Air distribution adjustment

5 Maximum AC

6 Interior air recirculation

7 Rear screen demisting / defrosting

8 AC on/off

9 Air flow adjustment

AC On-Off Control

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It is used to:

- lower the temperature in summer.
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.
- Press button **(8)** to turn the air conditioning on/off.

NOTE

The air conditioning cannot operate when the air flow adjustment is set to OFF.

Automatic AC Control

This automatic mode ensures optimum management of the passenger compartment temperature, air flow and air distribution, based on the selected comfort level.

- Press the button **(2) AUTO** to activate/ deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

NOTE

In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Recirculation Control

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windshield and side windows.

The recirculation of interior air allows the passenger compartment to be isolated from polluted air in areas of heavy traffic and inside tunnels.

NOTE

When required, this function also allows faster heating or cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

- Press button **(6)** to recirculate the interior air or allow the intake of exterior air.

WARNING

Avoid the prolonged recirculation of interior air in order to ensure a good supply of fresh air and reduce the risk of misting (especially when several passengers are on board or when the air is cold/damp, etc.).

Temperature Control

- Push the button **(2)** up to increase the value or down to decrease it.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

Air flow adjustment

- Push the button **(9)** up to increase the air flow or down to decrease it.

The air flow symbol is filled in or emptied gradually, according to the value set.

Air distribution adjustment

- Pushing button **(4)** successively directs the air flow.

Possible option:

- central and side vents.
- central vents, side vents and footwells.
- central vents, side vents, footwells, windshield and side windows.
- footwells.
- windshield, side windows and footwells.
- windshield and side windows (demisting or defrosting).
- windshield, side windows, central vents and side vents.

Maximum air conditioning

This function automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and activates interior air recirculation.

- Press button **(5)** to activate/deactivate the function.

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

Introduction about Infotainment System

WARNING

The Infotainment system must be used so that the vehicle can be driven safely at all times. If in doubt, stop the vehicle and operate the Infotainment system while the vehicle is stationary.

GPS navigation - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

NOTE

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

WARNING

The system is protected in such a way as to operate only on your vehicle.
For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

Some functions cannot be accessible when driving.

WARNING

The navigation system is a driving aid.
The driver stays fully responsible to always observe the traffic and to drive according to the applicable traffic rules. All instructions on the proper use of the navigation system should be followed. By using and entering in the navigation system, accept this page.

NOTE

Updates

The user instructions of the vehicle shall specify that periodical updates are required to maintain performance and explain the available procedures to obtain and, if applicable, to perform these updates.
For more information on **Settings**, particularly **Updating The Software**, refer to the corresponding section.

First steps

The system allows to interact with a variety of features using the touch screen, the steering mounted controls and voice commands.
By integrating with a Bluetooth® enabled smartphone, the system provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, navigation and smartphone's compatible applications.
The touch screen gives a quick access to all of entertainment, communication and navigation options.

NOTE

The OSS (Open Source Software) source codes for the systems are available at the following link:
https://www.citroen.com/open-source



The system starts when the ignition is switched on.

Short press, ignition off: system on/off.
Short press, ignition on: mute/restore sound.

Long press, ignition on: start standby mode (mute sound, screens and clock display off).

- Increase or decrease the volume using the knob or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on equipment)

Information

This system gives access to the following elements:

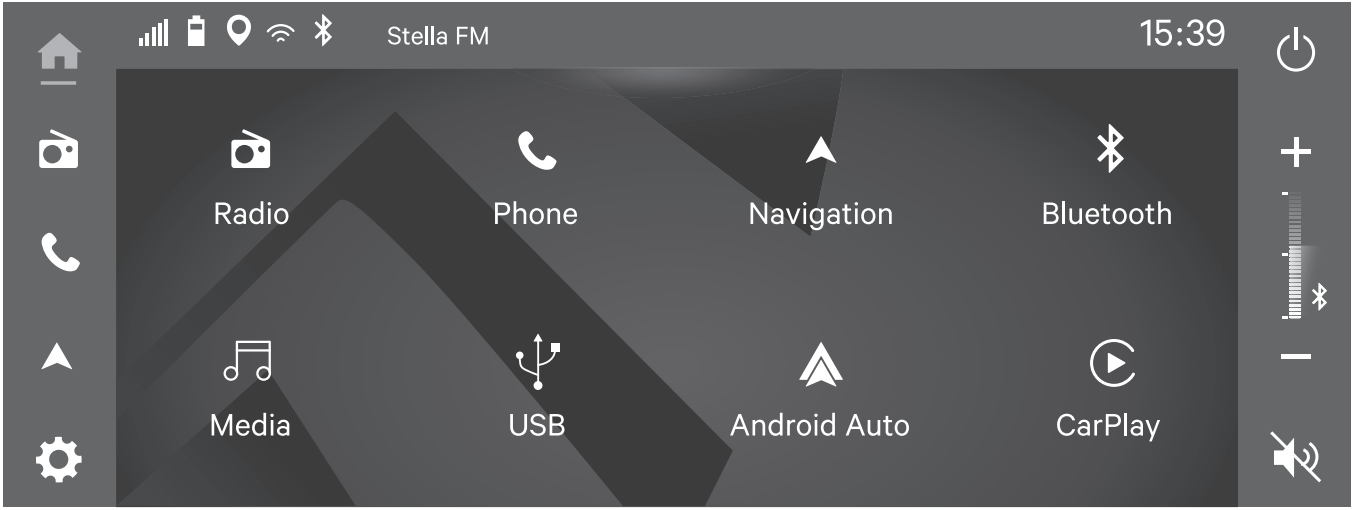
- Time and date.
- Settings for audio equipment.
- Display of visual maneuvering aid functions.
- Audio equipment and telephone controls with display of associated information.
- Connected services and display of associated information.
- Voice recognition.
- Navigation system controls and display of associated information (depending on equipment).

Recommendation

This screen uses capacitive sensing technology.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

- Use a soft, clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Menu


Stella FM
15:39
Radio
Phone
Navigation
Bluetooth
Media
USB
Android Auto
CarPlay


Displays the settings


Displays the navigation menu


Displays the phone menu
Displays the phone projection screen when phone projection is active


Displays the radio menu


Displays the home screen


Connects or disconnects a device with the Bluetooth function


Switches the system on / off


Adjusts the volume of connected device


Mutes the sound


Displays the Apple CarPlay app on the Info Display


Displays the Android Auto app on the info Display


Changes the media source


Displays the audio menu

Updating The System

To update the system or the map (where provided), download the “Citroën Update” tool on the PC or Mac. This tool will prepare the USB stick for use in the vehicle.

NOTE

To install the ‘Citroën Update’ tool on the computer, it is necessary to have administrator rights. If do not have these, please contact an authorised dealer to have the update carried out.

Updating the map and the infotainment software may take some time (up to 10 minutes for the software and up to 40 minutes for navigation).

NOTE

If a software update and a map update are available, we recommend installing both at the same time.

Updating the Software


Insert the key into the USB port of the vehicle

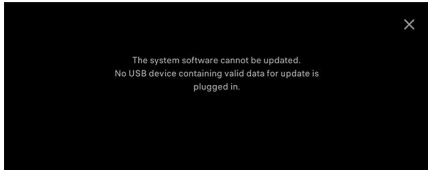

Press the **"Settings"** application.

- In the list, select the "**General**" tab.
- Select "**Software Update**" tab.

The current software version will be displayed.

- Select “**Update System Software**” to start the update process.
- When the reading of the USB key with a software update content is completed and no issue is detected, the system proposes to perform the software update. Select "**Update**"
- Once the software update is complete, select "**Restart**".

After the system restarts, a screen appears stating that the system has been successfully installed.



This message can appear on the screen if the USB key connected to the USB Plug doesn't contain a software update or if it does but is still in process of the initial reading of the key. Ignore this message and don't remove the USB stick. This message will disappear in 10 seconds. Then, follow the instructions on the screen.

Updating the Map



Insert the key into the USB port of the vehicle



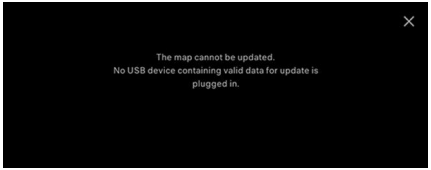
Press the **"Settings"** application.

- In the list, select the "**General**" tab.
- Select "**Map Update**" tab.

The current software version will be displayed.

- Select "**Update Map**" to start the update process.
- When the reading of the USB key with a map update content is completed and no issue is detected, the system proposes to perform the map update. Select "**Update**"
- Once the software update is complete, select "**Restart**".

After the system restarts, a screen appears stating that the system has been successfully installed.



This message could appear on the screen if the USB connected to the USB Plug doesn't contain a map update or if it does but is still in process of the initial reading of the key.
Ignore this message and don't remove the USB stick. This message will disappear in 10 seconds

Operating Conditions

ICE/Hybrid 48V

- It is essential to leave the engine running while installing updates
- Updates cannot be performed while driving; otherwise, they will be interrupted.
  We recommend parking your car outdoors rather than in an enclosed space (such as a garage).

BEV

- It is essential to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and then the "START / STOP" button. Keep the brake pedal pressed until the word READY appears on the instrument panel.
- Updates cannot be performed while driving; otherwise, they will be interrupted
- After a certain time (20–30 min), the vehicle will switch to Eco mode. If the update takes longer (especially if the map is being updated), remain seated in the driver's seat with the seatbelt fastened and the doors closed until the update is complete.
- The battery cannot be charged while the update is in progress

NOTE

Do not remove the USB stick from the car before the update process is complete.

NOTE

Do not turn off your engine before the update process is complete.

Cybersecurity

Connected Services

Multiple connected services are accessible via app, online or inside the vehicle.

NOTE

Connected services are not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

NOTE

Full functionality of connected services is subject to registration and proper activation.

More information are available online:
www.citroen.com
Connected services may include live navigation such as online traffic information as well as vehicle status and information such as maintenance alerts.
Services accessible within the vehicle also include emergency call and assistance call.
These functions are automatically activated.
Terms and conditions apply.
Correct connectivity settings and privacy settings are necessary to establish the connection to the available connected services.

Connectivity Settings

To display the system settings menu



Open the **"Settings"** application.



Select

Then select the connectivity menu.
The following settings can be managed:

- **Wireless devices**: display all paired devices, connect or disconnect a device, choose the connection preferences for each device (Bluetooth or phone projection) and search for nearby devices
- **Wi-Fi networks**: activate or deactivate Wi-Fi, search for nearby Wi-Fi networks and connect the system to a Wi-Fi network
- **Privacy Settings**: activate or deactivate data and location sharing for authorized services

Privacy Settings

The "Privacy Settings" can be setted only as pre-configured by default in "Private Mode".
The following privacy settings can be set:

- share data and location
- share data
- private mode

To use all available connected services without restrictions, it is necessary to share data and location.
When the private mode is activated, connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.
The "Privacy Settings" can be set via the privacy menu within the **Settings** in the cluster ⇨62

"Sharing Data and Location"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the personal data needed for each valid available connected service.

NOTE

The personal data required to use the connected services is sent to the providers of these services.

"Sharing Data"

This mode allows the vehicle to externally transmit all the data needed for each valid available connected service, with the exception of vehicle location data (e.g. GPS coordinates).

NOTE

Some connected services may not function without the vehicle location data.

NOTE

This mode will not be applied to services bent to legal obligations (e.g. eCall (SOS) system and Speed Limit Information function, where applicable), to some connected services essential for the vehicle (e.g. remote updating of software and firmware by 'Over The Air' technology), or to specific connected services for which it is expected to prevent malicious usages from other users (e.g. Connected alarm).

"Private Mode"

This mode does not allow the vehicle to transmit personal data outside the vehicle.

NOTE

Connected services will only perform local processing inside the vehicle with limited functions.

NOTE

Professional purposes

If the vehicle is used for professional purposes or under the terms of specific contracts (e.g. corporate fleet, government assignment), some privacy modes will not be available for the user on the screen, depending on the data sharing needs of the services.

Radio

Choosing The Media



Press **Media** to display the main page.



Press this button to switch to Radio main page.



This icon is displayed.

Playing a track



Press **Media** to display the main page.



Once the portable device is connected, browsing through the files is possible by pressing this button.

Some information appears, such as the title, artist, album and duration of the track currently playing.



Short press: go to the previous/ next track.



Track playback/pause.



Repeat the current title or the list of selected titles.



Random track playback.

NOTE

To fast-forward or rewind a track, drag the playback progress slider at the bottom of the page.

Choosing The Radio Frequency



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to change the waveband (FM, AM or DAB), according to the country of sale.

WARNING

18 radio stations can be pre-set on each waveband.

WARNING

Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the manufacturer, such as a charger with USB socket connected to the 12 V socket.
The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and does not indicate any malfunction of the system.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

NOTE

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of

current information on the radio station being listened to.
The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.
The volume may be higher when receiving traffic alerts or news.

DAB/FM station tracking

NOTE

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "AF" (alternative frequency) option enables to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

NOTE

When the system switches to analogue station, there is a delay of a few seconds with sometimes a change in volume.
When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

WARNING

If the "DAB" radio station is not available, the sound cuts out when the digital signal quality becomes poor and the "AF" alternative frequency is crossed out.

Selecting a radio station



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to start/stop the scan for available radio stations.
The radio stations found are displayed in the list of favourite radios.

Or



Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for the previous/ next radio stations.
The tuner stops at the first radio station found.

Or



Press one of the buttons to perform a manual search for the lower/ higher frequency.

On each press, the tuner decrements/ increments by one frequency step (e.g. 0.05 MHz on FM; 1 KHz on AM). The value of the frequency step depends on the country of sale.
In the last two cases, it is possible to manually store each radio station found.



If necessary, press one of the buttons to navigate in the Radio Favorites list.

1 2 3 ... Press and hold down the desired preset number.
A new memory entry replaces the previous one.

Recalling a stored radio station



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the list of available radio stations.

Select a radio station in the list.
Or



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to change the waveband (FM, AM or DAB), according to the country of sale.



If necessary, press one of the buttons to navigate in the Radio Favorites list.

1 2 3 ... Press and hold down the desired preset number.

A new memory entry replaces the previous one.

Audio Settings

Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press **Audio**.

In this screen, it is possible modify the **Balance & Fader** settings, the **Equalizer** settings, the Volume settings and activate the **SDVC** (Speed Dependent Volume Control) option.

Multimedia System

General Information

NOTE

The functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of the vehicle, and according to the country of sale.

WARNING

The system is protected in such a way as to operate only on your vehicle.
For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth®.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to Mirror Screen (Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

Some functions cannot be accessible when driving.

Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on the vehicle and option package, it is possible to use different controls on steering wheel to interact with the touch screen system in different ways



Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

Mute/Unmute the sound: short press in the center.

Short press: validate a selection; movement in the lists.

Radio: next station (in the list of favorites radio stations).

Media: next track.

Phone (short press): accept the incoming call.

Short press: validate a selection; movement in the lists.

Radio: previous station (in the list of favorites radio stations).

Media: previous track.

Phone (short press): refuse the incoming call; hang up the call in progress.



Voice control:

Short press, voice commands of the smartphone connected using Bluetooth® (Siri with Apple®/ Google Assistant with Android) via the system.

Applications

Radio



Select a radio station (FM, AM and DAB).

Media



Select a media source (USB, iPod®, Bluetooth®, Apple®CarPlay® and Android Auto).

Phone



Connect a smartphone via Bluetooth®, make and receive calls, access the phonebook, call log.

Navigation
(Depending on equipment)



Configure guidance and choose a destination.
Use the services available in real time depending on equipment.

Settings



Main settings for the touch screen, audio system and GPS.

Voice commands

First steps

The voice recognition setting is available with the cellular network and according to the language previously selected in the smartphone.

Information - Using the system



When voice commands are activated, say your command after the audible signal.
For commands in several stages, interaction takes place with the system to complete the initial request.
Some commands self-validate after 7 seconds.
If the system has not taken your command into account, it will indicate this by a voice message and an on-screen display.

NOTE

Voice Assistant/Data Usage. Vehicle's location and voice recordings are not concerned; only textual transcriptions of your conversations with the voice assistant are kept after to be pseudonymised.

Opening voice recognition



Voice commands can be used on any screen page, provided there are no other sources which take priority in use (reverse, emergency or assistance call, telephone call, other smartphone voice recognition already launched).

Choice of opening voice recognition:

- Press the button located on the steering wheel.

or

- Say "**Siri**" or "**OK Google**" depending on smartphone type.

WARNING

To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

– Use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.

– After opening voice recognition with the steering wheel-mounted button or the button on the touch screen, always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before talking. No "beep" sounds when voice recognition is opened using "Hello Citroën".

– For optimal operation, it is recommended that you close the windows and the sunroof (depending on equipment) to avoid any external interference, and switch the ventilation off.
– Before speaking the voice commands, ask the other passengers not to speak.



Voice command example for radio and media:

"I want to listen to michael jackson"



Voice command example for telephone:

"Call Matthew's mobile"

"call 0113 345 9869"

"Call jonathan"

NOTE

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth®, a pop-up window appears: "**No Device Connected**", and the voice session will be closed.



Voice command example for navigation:

"navigate home"

"Navigate me to gabrielle's house"

"search for public parking nearby"

NOTE

Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

Navigation

Navigation home page

(Depending on equipment)



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the shortcut menu for the various options.



Press this button to display the search page (address, name or point of interest (POI)).





Press the corresponding button to zoom in/out, or use two fingers on the screen.



Press this button to select the map orientation mode (North or Vehicle).

Main menu

Access



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Options Settings



Press this button to display the shortcut menu for the various options.

Choosing a new destination



Press this button to display the search page.

Click on the **Search or Address** field to enter an address or a name.

An alphanumeric keypad appears.

Enter the "**City**", "**Street**", '**Number**" and confirm by pressing the respective proposals displayed.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Choosing one of the last destinations



Press this button to display the search page.

Scroll down for the last desired destination and confirm by pressing on it.
or



Press Recent Destinations to obtain more destinations.

Select the desired destination and confirm by pressing on it.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Choosing one of My Places



Press this button to display the search page.



Press **My Places** to obtain private destinations.



Select **Home** or **Work** and confirm by pressing on it.



OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Choosing a point of interest (POI)



Press this button to display the search page.
Select the type of POI by pressing on it (e.g. Parking, Service station).

A list of the corresponding POI selected appears.
or



Press **Find Nearby POIs** to obtain POI around the vehicle position.

Select the POI to visit and confirm by pressing on it.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Main types of POI displayed on top of the screen:



Parking



Service station



Bank/Finance



Restaurant



Hotel



Pharmacy/Medical



Additional types of POI

Choosing a point on the map



Press this button to display the search page.

Explore the map by dragging it with fingers.

Zoom the desired area by pressing on "**+**" button.

Select the destination by pressing the map.

OK Press this button to start the guidance.

Connectivity

Information - Bluetooth®

WARNING

For safety reasons and because they require continued attention on the part of the driver, pairing operations between the Bluetooth® mobile phone and the vehicle's Bluetooth® hands-free system must be carried out with the vehicle stationary and the ignition switched on.

NOTE

Make sure that the mobile phone's Bluetooth® function is activated and "visible to all".
In the event of a malfunction, it is advisable to deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth® function from the mobile phone.

NOTE

Once back in the vehicle, if the last connected mobile phone is present again (Bluetooth® function activated), it is automatically recognised and, within about 30 seconds of starting up, the pairing is automatically carried out.

Pairing a Bluetooth® mobile device

WARNING

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® mobile devices used. Consult the phone user guide, the service provider and the OEM portal to check which services are available.

NOTE

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the phone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the phone.
If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth® function on the phone and deleting any CITROËN name present in the devices list.

NOTE

Depending on phone type, you may by prompted to accept the transfer of contacts.

Procedure from the phone



In order to make the system Bluetooth® visible, first open the **Devices Settings** menu on the system and activate the Bluetooth® function.



From the Bluetooth® menu on personal phone, select the system name from the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the phone and follow the instructions on the phone and system touch screen.

Procedure from the system



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



In order to make the system Bluetooth® visible, first open the **Devices Settings** menu on the system and activate the Bluetooth® function.

Press **Scan for Devices** item.

The list of detected devices is displayed. Select the required phone name in this list.

Managing paired mobile devices.

To connect or disconnect a paired phone and switch to Android Auto or Apple®CarPlay®:



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press **Devices Settings** to display the paired devices list.



Press the **Bluetooth** icon to connect/ disconnect the desired paired device.

Deleting a paired mobile device



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press **Devices Settings** to display the paired devices list.



Press this icon to delete the desired paired device.

Information - Wi-Fi

NOTE

The Wi-Fi connection including credential sharing with the user's smartphone happens automatically after successful Bluetooth® connection with a wireless supported smartphone.

WARNING

The Wi-Fi connection can only be used for Android Auto or Apple CarPlay wireless connection.

NOTE

The Wi-Fi network uses the 5 GHz frequency.
Some smartphones may not support this feature.

Information - Mirror Screen®

WARNING

Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's Android Auto or Apple CarPlay technology on the vehicle's screen. For Apple CarPlay technology, the Apple CarPlay function must first be activated on the smartphone. In all cases, the smartphone must be unlocked, to enable the communication process between the smartphone and the system to function (at first connection only). As principles and standards are constantly changing, we recommend keeping your smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system. Refer to your smartphone for Android Auto or Apple CarPlay settings.

NOTE

For the list of suitable smartphones, visit the Android Auto and Apple CarPlay® websites
https://www.android.com/auto/
https://www.apple.com/in/ios/carplay/

WARNING

Stop the vehicle before connecting Android Auto or Apple®CarPlay® and follow the instructions on your smartphone.

NOTE

On connecting the USB cable, the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

NOTE

It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile device.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Mirror Screen®

Apple®CarPlay® connection

NOTE

The Apple CarPlay® function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connecting Apple®CarPlay® smartphone can be carried out either by an USB cable or using a wireless connection.

USB connection

NOTE

Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection by Apple CarPlay.

For more information on **USB sockets**, refer to the corresponding section.



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by an USB cable.



Activate the Bluetooth® function on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® function.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Apple®CarPlay® is connected, Apple®CarPlay® is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (USB) is connected.



From the Home page, press the **AppleCarPlay** icon to display the Apple®CarPlay® interface.

NOTE

When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to other mode; the source must be changed manually.

Wireless connection



First activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Apple®CarPlay® is connected, Apple®CarPlay® is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (Wi-Fi) is connected.



As soon as the wireless connection is established, press the **AppleCarPlay** icon to display the Apple®CarPlay® interface.

NOTE

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the network quality and the smartphone performances.

For wireless Apple®CarPlay®, subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi on personal device.

Android Auto connection

NOTE

Ensure the latest Android Auto application is available on your smartphone. If not, install it via "Play Store".
The Android Auto function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.

Connecting Android Auto smartphone can be carried out either by an USB cable or using a wireless connection.

USB connection

NOTE

Only one USB socket enables the Mirror Screen® connection by Apple CarPlay.

For more information on **USB sockets**, refer to the corresponding section.



Connect the USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by an USB cable.



Activate the Bluetooth® function on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® function.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Android Auto is connected, Android Auto is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (USB) is connected.



From the Home page, press the **Android Auto** icon to display the **Android Auto** interface.

NOTE

A validation procedure on the smartphone has to be followed for the first connection, with the vehicle stationary.

Wireless connection



First activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions on the smartphone.



From the Home page, press this icon and then activate the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi functions.

As soon as a Bluetooth® device offering Android Auto is connected, Android Auto is automatically available, provided a wide-band communication channel (Wi-Fi) is connected.



As soon as the wireless connection is established, press the **Android Auto** icon to display the Android Auto interface.

NOTE

There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the network quality and the smartphone performances.

For wireless Android Auto, subsequent automatic connection of the smartphone requires activation of Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi on personal evice.



As soon as the wireless connection is re-established, press the Android Auto icon to display the Android Auto interface.

Android Auto Full Screen

If **Android Auto** is available in FULL SCREEN mode, the display shown only the **Android Auto** page and the Mute and Volume icons are not available.

To exit **Android Auto** Full screen follow the next steps:



Select the "split-view" icon from Google Maps Full screen mode



Select the **Apps** icon



Select the Citroën icon.
This will display the home page, where all main controls become availabel again, Including the mute and volume icons.



To return to **Android Auto**, select **Android Auto** icon

NOTE

Once **Android Auto** is connected, dedicated apps will appear for vehicles with automatic gearbox only (Game-Snacks, Customise).

Media



Press **Radio** to display the main page.



Press this button to swith to **Media** main page.



This icon is displayed.

Audio Settings/Devices Settings



For more information on **Settings**, refer to the corresponding section.

Changing the source (Radio to Media)



Press **Media** to display the main page.



Press this button to change the media source (USB, iPod®, Bluetooth®, Android Auto or Apple®CarPlay®), according to the country of sale.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

The streaming function allows to listen to the audio stream coming from the smartphone(s) connected via USB, iPod®, Bluetooth® or Mirror Screen®.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of the system.
If playback does not start, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

NOTE

Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices or Apple® devices via the USB sockets. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Devices are managed using the audio system controls.
The system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg, .mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the WMA 9 standard.
The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.
To avoid reading and display problems, it is recommended to choose file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).
Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

NOTE

It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile device.
To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Phone

WARNING

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, hand-held smartphones are forbidden when driving.
To make a call directly from the smartphone, the vehicle must first be safely stopped.

NOTE

While driving, it is always possible to use the steering wheel controls or voice commands to start or end a call.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.
To accept the incoming call:



Press this touch screen button.

or



Press this steering wheel button.

Once the call has been picked up, a screen appears with the following information:

- the caller's phone number.
- the call status (incoming/outgoing, in progress, conference, ended).
- the call duration.

To refuse the incoming call/ hang up the call in progress:



Press this touch screen button.

or



Press this steering wheel button.

Making a call

Calling a new number



Press Phone to display the main page.



Press this button to display the numeric keypad.

Dial the phone number on the numeric keypad.



Press this button to launch the call.

Calling a contact from the phonebook



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the phonebook.

Select the desired contact name in the list or



Press this button to search the contact name.

Enter your first letters; the corresponding contact names appear.
Select the desired contact name in the list.



Press this button to launch the call.

Calling a number from the call log



Press **Phone** to display the main page.



Press this button to display the call log.
Select the desired last number in the list.



Press this button to launch the call.

Call options

Call in progress

During a phone conversation, a screen appears with the following options:



Mute/Unmute Press this button to mute/unmute the micro of the system.





Handset/Hands-free Press this button to transfer the call from the system to the smartphone and vice versa.





Hold/Retrieve Press this button to hold/retrieve the call.



End call Press this button to hang up the call.



Add Press this button to add a new call (Conference call).



Keypad Press this button to display the numeric keypad.

Multiple calls

If there is a second incoming call, it is possible to accept it.
The first call is on hold.
Then, it is possible to choose between switching from one to the other or merging the two calls.
The call can be ended with a specific contact or the conference call can be terminated.



Swap

Press this button to switch to the first call and put the second on hold.



Merge

Press this button to merge the two calls.
These options apply when a new call is received during a call in progress.

Settings

General Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **General** to access the various items to be set:

- **Language**: to choose the system display language from the list.
- **Factory Reset**: to return to factory default system.
- **Software Update**: to update the system by USB device and to see the current software/ hardware versions.

NOTE

The selection of the display language in the touchscreen is independent from the instrument panel. Refer to the "Dashboard" section to change the instrument panel language.

Display Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Display** to access the various items to be set:

- **Night Brightness**: to adjust the touch screen brightness using the **-** and **+** buttons or by moving the slider.

NOTE

The brightness setting is only available when the vehicle's lamps are on in night mode.

Devices Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Devices** to access the various items to be set:

- **Bluetooth**: to turn on/off the Bluetooth® visibility of the system.
- **Wi-Fi**: to activate/deactivate the Wi-Fi network of the system.
- **Scan for devices**: to select a mobile device to be connected (USB, Bluetooth®, Apple®CarPlay® or Android Auto).
- **Device list**: to view the previously paired mobile device and connect or delete a device.

Audio Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Audio** to access the various items 10 to be set:

- **Radio Settings:** to activate/deactivate the radio functions (e.g. Radio Data System (RDS), Alternative Frequency (AF), Traffic Announcement (TA)).
- **Balance/Fader**: to adjust the left/right (Balance) and front/rear (Fader) sound distribution.
- **Equalizer**: to adjust the treble, mid and bass sound levels and to activate/deactivate the loudness and speed dependent volume control functions.
- **Volume**: to adjust the volume according to each sound source.

Clock Settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Press **Clock** to access the various items to be set:

- **Format**: to choose the date and time display format.
- **Date and Time**: to manually adjust the date and time.

Format

Select the Date Format: **DD/MM/YYYY**, **MM-DD-YY** or **YYYY-MM-DD**.
Select the Time Format: **24-hour** or **12-hour**.

Press **APPLY** to validate.

Date and Time

Adjust the Day, Month and Year using the Up and Down arrows.
Adjust the Hours and Minutes using the Up and Down arrows.

Press **APPLY** to validate.

Smartphone Station

The Smartphone Station system allows to connect a smartphone with the vehicle's equipment, such as the speakers.
Use the steering-mounted controls to manage certain functions.
The user interface is provided by the **Smartphone Station** feature integrated into the **MyCitroën App** mobile application.
Once the mobile application has been installed and the smartphone connected to the system, it is possible to access the following functions and customize the dashboard:

- Online Radio and Radio Tuner[2].
- Phone (e.g. Contacts, Dialpad).
- Navigation (e.g. e-Routes, Waze).
- Media (e.g. Deezer, Amazon Music).
- Library (e.g. mp3 audio files).
- Calendar notifications (e.g. Google Calendar for Android).

[2] Depending on country.

NOTE

The system is not compatible with a tablet or laptop.
During use, it is recommended charging the smartphone via USB at the same time.

WARNING

For safety reasons, certain functions or operations requiring sustained attention are not accessible when driving.

WARNING

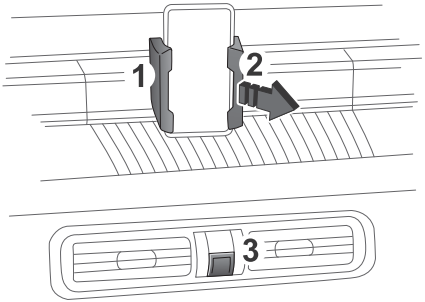
Always place the smartphone **in a vertical position while driving** so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone.

The smartphone can only be positioned horizontally when the vehicle is stationary.

Operation

First use / Installation procedure

1. Download the **MyCitroën App** mobile application onto your smartphone from the appropriate online store.
2. Create a user account or re-use your current **MyCitroën** account.



3. Pull the right clamp arm (**2**) of the station and install the smartphone against the left clamp arm (**1**).
4. Release the right clamp arm (**2**) against the smartphone to secure it to the dashboard.
5. Start the **Smartphone Station** feature, read the legal and safety instructions and then confirm them.
6. Activate the Bluetooth® function on the smartphone.
7. With the ignition on, press and hold button (**3**) to pair the smartphone with the system.
8. Select the system name "**MyCitroën XXXXXX**" from the list of devices detected on the smartphone (the "X" characters corresponds to the last digits of the VIN).

The system then suggests setting up automatic reconnection using **NFC** technology. This setting is optional.

To set the **NFC** parameters later, select "**Settings > General > Auto-launch**" from this menu.

NOTE

NFC communication must first be activated on the smartphone.

Finally, the application's home page appears.

Automatic reconnection

Thanks to **NFC** technology, the application can be launched automatically if the smartphone is already recognized by the system and if the smartphone's **NFC** settings have already been made with the system.

- Otherwise, press button **(3)** briefly to display the application's home page.

Main controls

The main controls used on the various pages of the **Smartphone Station** feature are as follows:


Access to menu (**Phone, Online Radio, Tutorials** and **Settings**)


Exit of application


Return to previous page


Close current page


Search

A B C Search filters (alphabetical or numerical)


Refresh current page


Access to details


Adding or removing favorites


Random playback


Repeat media


Call via telephone keypad


Call via phonebook contacts

For more information on the various functions of the **Smartphone Station** feature, refer to the **Tutorials** section of the menu.

3rd Party Apps

Remotely operable additional functions (BEV)

(Depending country of sale)

Download on the App Store GET IT ON Google Play



The following functions are available from the **MyCitroën App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

Installation procedure

- Download the **MyCitroën App** application from the appropriate online store for personal smartphone.
- Create an account.
- Enter the vehicle identification number (available on the vehicle registration certificate).

For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

Network coverage. In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.

A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

Connect ONE

NOTE

This service is included for 10 years from the date at which the warranty starts, and is automatically activated when Connect PLUS is installed and activated.

Connect PLUS

NOTE

This service is included for 12 months from the date at which the warranty starts. Activating Connect PLUS will automatically activate Connect ONE.

After the creation of account via **MyCitroen App**, the installation of Connect PLUS is necessary to access the connected services.

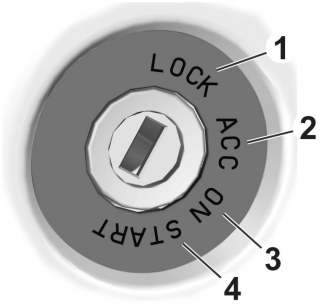
Connect PLUS provides CONNECTED NAVIGATION, which includes traffic information and map updates, as well as Voice recognition. After the included 12 months subscription period, it will be necessary to visit the Citroen Connected Services store to renew the Connect PLUS pack services.

STARTING & OPERATING

Starting And Stopping The Engine

Starting the Engine

Vehicles with ignition switch



With the parking brake applied:

1. With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.

   With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal.
2. Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code ⇨ 41
3. Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.
4. Turn key to position (**3**) to release the steering wheel lock.
5. Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal.
   Do not operate accelerator pedal.
6. Turn key briefly to position (**4**) and release after engine has been started.

Vehicles with "Power button"

1. Immobilize the vehicle using the parking brake.
2. Select mode **P** on the automatic gearbox.
3. Press the **START/STOP** button.

NOTE

The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment.
The electronic key is also detected in the boot.
If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed.
Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off.

If there is still a problem, refer to the "**Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off**" section.



For vehicles with manual transmission:

1. Press the clutch pedal.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the **Start/Stop** button.

For vehicles with automatic transmission:

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Press and release the **Start/Stop** button.

NOTE

In certain cases, significant force shall be applied to move the steering wheel (e.g. wheels turned to full lock).

- With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **(4)** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine has

started, release the key and allow it to return to position **(3)**.

NOTE

Petrol engines. After a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

- With a **hybrid version:** the petrol engine may stop after the first start if operating conditions allow (e.g. state of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, efficiency of the catalytic converter, torque demand, selected driving mode, thermal comfort of the passenger compartment). Then, the vehicle moves off immediately in all-electric (e-Launch function).

WARNING

Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide.

Danger of poisoning and death!

WARNING

Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running. If the vehicle is to be left with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

WARNING

Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

NOTE

In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

WARNING

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying - risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Stopping the Engine

Vehicles with Ignition Switch

1. Immobilise the vehicle.
2. With the engine at idle, turn the key to position **(2)**.
3. With the ignition switched off, turn the key to position **(1)**, then remove the key from the ignition switch.
4. To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

NOTE

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

WARNING

Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

NOTE

Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground. When leaving the vehicle, keep the key and lock the vehicle.

Starting/Switching off electric vehicles (BEV)

Starting

The drive selector must be in mode **P**.

1. If using a conventional or remote control key, depress the brake pedal and turn the key to position **(4)** until the motor starts, without depressing the accelerator. As soon as the motor starts, release the key so it returns to position **(3)** .
2. Keep the foot on the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator light comes on and an audible signal is emitted, indicating that the vehicle is ready to drive.
3. With the foot on the brake, select mode **D** or **R**.
4. Release the brake pedal, then accelerate.

On starting, the instrument panel goes on and the power indicator cursor moves to the "neutral" position. The steering column automatically unlocks (a sound could be heard and the steering wheel could be felt moving).

Switching off

- If using a conventional or remote control key, turn the key fully to position **(1 . Stop)**.

Before exiting the vehicle, check that:

- The drive selector is in mode **P**.
- The **READY** indicator light is off.

NOTE

If the driver's door is opened while the required conditions for switching off are not met, an audible signal is emitted, accompanied by the display of a warning message.

Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off.
After switching off the engine and for a maximum cumulative period of around 30 minutes, it is possible to use functions such as the audio and telematic system, dipped beam headlights or courtesy lights.

Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

NOTE

If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.
To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
- For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

WARNING

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on the **12 V battery,** refer to the corresponding section.

Key not detected

Back-up starting



1. Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
2. Select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.

3. Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for approximately 5 seconds. In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Steering Wheel Lock

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause, depending on version, steering wheel lock.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed or tow-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a malfunction of the key battery, the steering wheel lock remains engaged. Do not try to start the vehicle by pushing it and do not tow it.

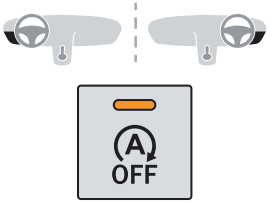
Stop & Start Automatic Function

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again. Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.
The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

To deactivate/reactivate the function:



1. Press the dashboard button.

When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator light is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

Associated indicator lights

Function activated: engine on standby (STOP mode).

Function deactivated or malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

Opening the bonnet. Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



⚠ WARNING

Driving on flooded roads. Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.Stop as soon as it is safe

Main Condition for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

Special cases

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start.
- Electric parking brake applied or being applied.
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.
- Braking assistance being used.



In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

NOTE

After the engine has restarted, STOP mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

NOTE

During parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates the intention to stop:

1. **With a manual gearbox:** when moving the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal.
2. **With an automatic gearbox:** with the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, when the brake pedal is depressed until the vehicle stops or when the mode **N** is selected, with the vehicle stationary.

Time Counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:

With a manual gearbox: when the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

With an automatic gearbox:

1. With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: when the brake pedal is released.
2. With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: when the mode **D** or M is selected.
3. With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: when the mode **R**, **N**, **D** or **M** is selected.
4. When the reverse gear is engaged.

Special Cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:

- Some specific conditions (braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.).
- With a manual gearbox: vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h).

- With an automatic gearbox, in mode **N**, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).



In these cases, this indicator light flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

Malfunctions



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning light flashes for a few moments on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lights come on if there is a fault.
Switch off the ignition then start the engine again.

WARNING

12 V battery. The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

e-Auto mode (Hybrid 48 V)

The petrol engine stops when low power or torque is required and in stabilized conditions.

The petrol engine is restarted by the belt starter.

The e-Auto mode can switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

- When the operating strategies permit.
- Vehicle speed up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
- When the driver releases the accelerator pedal in stabilized conditions or in deceleration.
- During the stop phases.

Restarting is only achieved by the belt starter until the torque demand is available, if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. When the torque demand is insufficient, the petrol engine restarts.

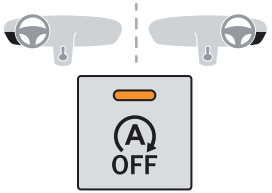
The e-Auto mode cannot switch off the petrol engine in the following cases:

- The state of charge is less than 30% of the traction battery energy.
- There is a need for vacuum brake assist depending on the altitude.
- Maintaining thermal comfort in the passenger compartment (heating, air conditioning, demisting/defrosting).

Deactivation/Reactivation

By default, the function is activated when the ignition is switched on.

The "**e-Auto OFF**" control on the dashboard activates/deactivates the e-Auto mode.



Press the dashboard button.
The display of a message on the instrument panel confirms the change of state.



Function deactivated, this indicator lights up in the instrument panel.

NOTE

If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the dashboard button.

Audible pedestrian warning system

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching (BEV), when driving in fully electric (Hybrid 48 V).
The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear.
This function cannot be deactivated.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

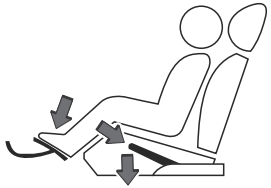
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Brakes

Parking Brake

Manual parking brake

Release



Pull the parking brake lever up slightly, press the release button, then lower the lever fully.

When driving the vehicle, if this warning light and the **STOP** warning light come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, this means that the play of he park-s not brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

Application

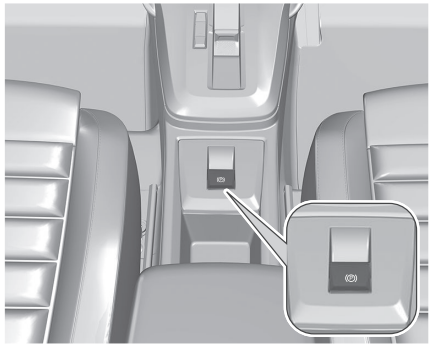
Pull the parking brake lever up to immobilize the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

When parking on a slope, turn the wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system automatically applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off, and releases it when the vehicle moves off.
EPB is active by default at engine start.



⚠ WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure the parking brake is applied.

Control indicator illuminates constantly when parking brake is applied.

1. To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.
2. To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.
This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

⚠ WARNING

The driver must apply the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Deactivation of the automatic EPB operation

In certain situations such as very cold weather or when being towed, it is necessary to deactivate the automatic operation of the EPB.

1. Start the engine
2. If the parking brake is released, apply the parking brake pulling the switch (Ⓟ)
3. Take the foot off the brake pedal
4. Press the switch for 10 to 15 seconds
5. Release the switch
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal
7. Pull the switch for 2 seconds



The deactivation of the automatic operation of the EPB is confirmed by illuminating a warning light in the Driver Information Center

1. Stop the engine

When the EPB automatic function is deactivated, the electric parking brake remains operational, but must be applied and released manual.
To reactivate the automatic operation, repeat the steps described above.

Parking the vehicle

⚠ DANGER

Do not park the vehicle or leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).

The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

⚠ WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P.**

When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.
When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the electric parking brake must be applied before engaging mode **P** of the automatic gearbox

⚠ WARNING

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

Indicator light



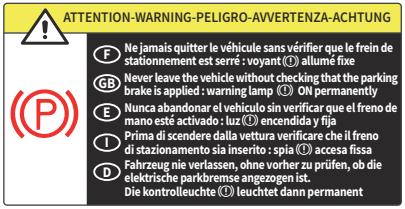
This indicator light comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".

The indicator light goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking brake released**".

The indicator light flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.
As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.



⚠ WARNING

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lights on the instrument panel and the control must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Manual release for Electric Parking Brake

With the ignition on or engine running:

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control.

NOTE

If the brake pedal is not depressed, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

Manual application for Electric Parking Brake

With the vehicle stationary, briefly pull the control.
The control indicator light flashes to confirm the application request.

Automatic release for Electric Parking Brake

First ensure that the engine is running and that the driver's door is closed.

The electric parking brake gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Select mode **D**, **L** or **R** (for automatic gearbox)
3. Select mode **D**, **C** or **R** (for drive selector)
4. Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

If the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

WARNING

When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

Automatic Application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

WARNING

It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

NOTE

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

Special Cases Of EPB

To immobilize the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

WARNING

In very cold conditions (ICE), applying the parking brake is not recommended.

To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

NOTE

With an automatic gearbox on ICE versione, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.

For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

With an automatic gearbox or a drive selector, when opening the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

1. Start the engine.
2. Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
3. Take the foot fully off the brake pedal.

4. Push the control for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
5. Release the control.
6. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
7. Pull the control for 2 seconds.



This indicator light on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

8. Release the control and the brake pedal.

With the automatic parking brake deactivated, the parking brake can be applied and released only through the manual switch.
Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator light on the instrument panel going out).

Emergency braking

⚠ WARNING

The emergency braking should only be used in exceptional situations (e.g. brake pedal failure, driver unwell, assisted driving).

In this context, the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.
The ABS and DSC systems stabilize the vehicle during emergency braking.

If emergency braking malfunctions, the message "**Parking brake fault**" will be displayed on the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lights on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.

In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Active Emergency Braking

Braking operation is assisted by active electronic systems, to reduce collision risks. Refer to the **"Drive selector (BEV)"** section ⇨118

Regenerative Braking

With the mode D or C and when decelerating

By default, the regenerative braking is automatically activated in **D** mode at every engine start. The vehicle slows more quickly when the driver releases the accelerator pedal.

The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is then used to partially recharge the traction battery, thereby increasing the vehicle's range.

⚠ WARNING

The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

The level of regenerative braking can be reduced by activating **C** (comfort) mode.

- From **D** mode, press button **C** to enter comfort mode (the button lights up when **C** is activated).

C is displayed on the instrument panel close to **D**.

The vehicle will still provide regenerative braking and energy recovery, but the levels are less than in **D** mode.

When the ignition is switched off, **C** mode is deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration. The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

With the brake pedal

When the brake pedal is depressed, the intelligent braking system automatically recovers some of the energy and uses it to recharge the traction battery.

This energy recovery also reduces use of the brake pads, thereby limiting their wear.

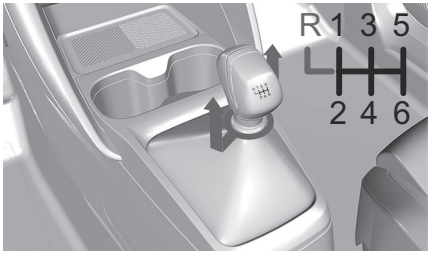
NOTE

The driver may experience a different sensation when depressing the brake pedal compared to a vehicle without regenerative braking.

Transmission

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear selector to the left, then forwards.

WARNING

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

NOTE

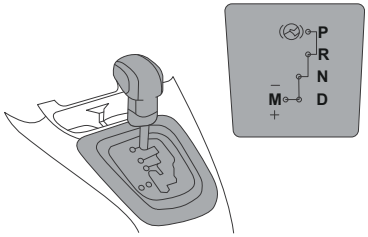
As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
– Always select neutral.
– Press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox (EAT6)

6-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are available:

- **Automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox.
- **Manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector module



P. Park

- Vehicle immobilized, parking brake applied or released.
- Engine starting.

R. Reverse

- Reversing maneuvers, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral

- Vehicle immobilized, parking brake applied.
- Engine starting.

D. Automatic operation

M. +/– Manual operation

- To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.

Information displayed on the instrument panel



When a position is selected in the grid with the gear selector, the corresponding indicator light illuminated on the instrument panel.

P. Park

R. Reverse

N. Neutral

D. Drive (automatic operation)

M1...6. Gear engaged during manual operation

—. Instruction not accepted during manual operation

Foot on the brake



Depress the brake pedal when this warning light is displayed on the instrument panel (e.g. when starting the engine).

Starting the vehicle

1. Apply the parking brake.



With the foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N.**

2. Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, the driver will hear an audible signal, accompanied by the display of a message.

3. With the engine running, depress the brake pedal.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Select position **R** , **D** or **M**.
6. Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

NOTE

If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

WARNING

When the engine is running at idle with the brakes released, if position **R, D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off even without the accelerator being pressed. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running.

When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the driving style, the road profile and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If the driver releases the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not shift to a higher gear for safety reasons.

WARNING

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.

Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Manual operation

To limit fuel consumption during an extended standstill with the engine running (for example, in a traffic jam), set the gear selector to **N** and apply the parking brake.

1. Selecting position **M** enables **sequential shifting** between the six gears.
2. To shift up/down through the gears, push the control backwards/forwards.

The gearbox only changes gear if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions allow; otherwise, the rules for automatic operation are temporarily applied.

D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is shown.

It is possible to change from position **D** to position **M** at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

Switching off the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, it is possible to engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilize the vehicle.

NOTE

If the gear selector is not in position **P,** when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears on the instrument panel.

- Return the gear selector to **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

When driving on flooded roads or when crossing a ford, proceed at walking pace.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, this warning light comes on accompanied by an audible signal and a message is displayed, when the ignition is switched on.

In this case, the gearbox goes into back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. The driver may feel a significant jolt (without risk to the gearbox) when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

There is a risk of damaging the gearbox:
– If the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed simultaneously.

– In the event of a battery failure, forcing the selector from position **P** to another position.

Electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6)

6-speed electrified dual-clutch automatic gearbox with push selector for hybrid vehicles. It includes an electric motor, which improves the performance of the petrol engine, reduces fuel consumption and drives in all-electric.



P. Auto Park
Press this button to switch to Parking mode.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

R. Reverse

N. Neutral
To free-wheeling and move the vehicle with the ignition ON.

D. Driving in automatic mode
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
The gearbox also manages braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

L. Driving with increased engine braking
Engine RPM will increase to provide higher engine braking when going downhill

- In mode **N**, with the foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
  - Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
  - Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

1. In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
2. In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
3. To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P.	Parking
R.	Reverse
N.	Neutral
D.	Driving in automatic gear
L1...6	Driving in low mode

However, in all-electric driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.

The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

Electric motor

The electric motor included in the automatic gearbox, which is used for the first start, provides 12 V power supply via the DC/DC converter and provides electric assistance to the petrol engine.
The electric motor has the following features:

- Provide an additional torque to the gearbox, optimizing the performance of the petrol engine.
- Recover the kinetic energy of the deceleration phases, converting it into electrical energy, which can be used for traction or for the power supply of electrical accessories installed on the vehicle.
- Recharge the 48 V traction battery when the 6 state of charge is too low.
- Provide all-electric driving only.

These features are achieved through the following functions set of automatic operating mode:

- e-Boost.
- e-Creeping.
- e-Launch.
- e-Queueing.
- e-Parking.

A manual operating mode is also available to activate/deactivate the restart of the petrol engine while driving: the e-Auto mode.

NOTE

When mode **P** or **N** is selected on the automatic gearbox, the noise level in the engine compartment may increase due to the start of the charging phase of the traction battery: this is normal and does not represent a malfunction.

Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.
With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

WARNING

With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

NOTE

When opening the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed

⚠ WARNING

At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver's door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

⚠ WARNING

In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

Special aspects of automatic mode

These functions respond to common driving situations where the electric motor is available to provide additional power or zero-emission driving.

NOTE

These functions are only available if the traction battery is sufficiently charged. These five functions cannot be deactivated.

e-Launch

With the petrol engine off, this function allows the vehicle to run in electric mode without affecting performance.
By depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle starts to drive as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Creeping

With the petrol engine off, by releasing the brake pedal, this function allows the vehicle to be moved forward or backward in electric mode without having to depress the accelerator pedal, as soon as the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Queueing

This function makes it possible to follow a queue of vehicles with several stops followed by restarts of the vehicle, using the e-Creeping, e-Launch and electric driving modes.

e-Parking

This function allows parking maneuvers to be carried out at reduced speed with the help of the electric motor when the mode **D** or **R** of the automatic gearbox is selected.

e-Boost

This function allows simultaneous operation of the petrol engine and the electric motor, combined with the automatic gearbox.
By fully depressing the accelerator pedal ("kickdown" function), when the traction battery is fully charged, it is possible to exceed the torque of the petrol engine alone, thanks to the additional torque provided by the electric motor.

NOTE

Repeated use of the brake pedal causes the restart of petrol engine to provide braking assistance.

Special aspects of low mode

The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.
The petrol engine can also be switched off in low mode when stopped in traffic or when the accelerator pedal is released.

NOTE

If high traction is required, the driver can deactivate the e-Auto mode using the dashboard button.

Starting the vehicle

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Start the petrol engine by depressing the brake pedal until the engine is running at a stabilized engine speed.
3. With the foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode **D**, or forwards to shift into reverse gear **R**.
4. Release the brake pedal.
5. Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The petrol engine may stop after the first start if operating conditions allow (e.g. state

of charge of the traction battery, external temperature, efficiency of the catalytic converter, torque demand, selected driving mode, thermal comfort of the passenger compartment).
Then, the vehicle moves off immediately in fully electric mode (e-Launch function).

Switching the vehicle off

Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.

However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable freewheeling mode).

Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

The corresponding indicator lights on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Gearbox malfunction

This warning light comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.
Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode

Depending on the malfunction, the gearbox only shifts in odd or even gears, locks in one gear or loses some gears.
The driver may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.
In the event of a malfunction, an audible warning sounds to indicate that the gearbox should be put into Park mode.

Selector malfunction

Minor malfunction

This warning light comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
In some cases, the selector indicator lights may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.
Major malfunction

This warning light comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

⚠ WARNING

Stop the vehicle. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Drive selector (BEV)



The drive selector is a pulse selector with a regenerative braking function.
The drive selector provides traction control based on the driving style, the road profile and the vehicle load.
With regenerative braking activated, it also manages engine braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

P. Park
Button for parking the vehicle: the front wheels are locked (the button lights up to indicate that it is activated).

R. Reverse
To engage reverse gear, with the foot on the brake pedal.

N. Neutral

D. Drive (automatic forward gear)

C. Comfort

To reduce engine braking.

Information displayed on the instrument panel
When the ignition is switched on, the drive selector status is displayed on the instrument panel:

P. Park.

R. Reverse.

N. Neutral.

D. Drive (automatic forward gear).

C. Comfort.

Operation

- In mode **N**, with the foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:
  - Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
  - Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.

Special cases

To avoid mode N (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode R is selected.
- To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

Free-wheeling (ICE)

In certain situations, e.g., in an automatic car wash etc., it is necessary that the wheels can move freely when the engine is switched off. To enable free wheeling, the vehicle has to be stationary, the engine has to be running and the driver's door has to be closed.

Hybrid 48 V and BEV:

No free wheeling with the engine switched **OFF**.

With manual or EAT6 automatic gearbox and manual parking brake

To release them

1. With the vehicle stationary and engine running, depress the brake pedal.
2. With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever into neutral.
3. With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to mode **N**.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Release the brake pedal, then switch off the engine.

A message is displayed on the cluster indicating that the wheels are unblocked for the next 15 minutes.

Reverting to normal operation

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector to mode **P.**

Air Suspension

Progressive Hydraulic Cushions

This suspension system with progressive hydraulic cushions improves driving comfort by filtering out the imperfections and demands of the road surface.
Each shock absorber is equipped with a hydraulic compression stop (at the base) and a hydraulic rebound stop (at the top).
Depending on the intensity of the shock to be absorbed, these stops provide the vehicle with a greater freedom of movement or gradually slow down the amount of movement in order to avoid any sudden jolts at the end of travel.
Unlike conventional suspension which absorbs the energy but then partially returns some of it, this active suspension absorbs and dissipates this energy, without producing any rebound.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ DANGER

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

- If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows.
- Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

- Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

⚠ CAUTION

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages, could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.
Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter.
Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Fuel

Fuels compatibility

E5 E10

Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively

ⓘ NOTE

The only petrol fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Traveling abroad

⚠ DANGER

Certain fuels could damage the vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, consult a dealer.

Refuelling

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 44 liters
⇨ 219

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning light illuminated on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 5 liters** of fuel remain.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning light appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards 0.
The driver must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

ⓘ NOTE

A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

⚠ WARNING

Stop & Start (where provided) / e-Auto mode. Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode or in stand-by; switch off the ignition.

Refuelling operation

⚠ DANGER

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.
Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ DANGER

Fuel is flammable and explosive.
No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

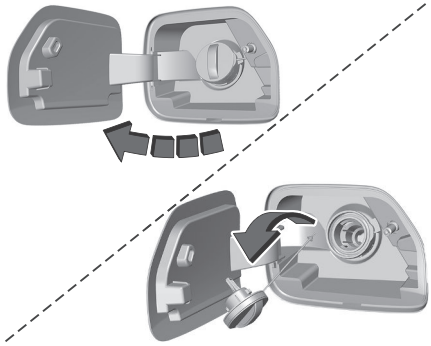
If a smell of fuel can be noticed inside the vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

⚠ WARNING

In case of misfueling, do not switch on ignition.

Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is normal, caused by the sealing of the fuel system.
To refuel in complete safety:

1. **Always switch off the engine.**



2. With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear-central part of the filler flap to open it.
3. Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
4. Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support (on the filler flap).
5. Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimize the risk of splashing).

ⓘ NOTE

Fuel top-ups must exceed 5 L and performed with the vehicle **switched off** to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Do not continue after the nozzle's third cutout. Doing so may cause malfunctions.

1. Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

If the wrong fuel was used for the vehicle, drain the fuel tank and refill it with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, 7 which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, use only unleaded fuel.

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

Fuel cut-off

The vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Charging

Battery Charging Operation

Electrified vehicles - General recommendations

These recommendations and general information concern electrified vehicles of the type: Hybrid 48 V and BEV.

High voltage system

⚠ WARNING

High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.
Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, the Manufacturer recommends:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let any jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.

- Never work on the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
- Never damage, modify or remove the high voltage cables (purple or orange) or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery.
Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.
Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later.
The Manufacturer recommends:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.
- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.

Traction battery

Traction battery overheating



If the following warning lights appear, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, it is required to:

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in the best conditions of safety.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Evacuate the vehicle as quickly as possible and move to a safe distance.
4. Call the fire department and/or the emergency services and tell them that the vehicle is an electric one.

WARNING

Danger of death / Risk of serious injury. A chain reaction can occur up to a traction battery fire.

WARNING

In the event of damage to the traction battery. It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself. Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Disposal of the traction battery

The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of the Manufacturer are followed.
If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.
In accordance with regulations, the Manufacturer ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

Hybrid system (Hybrid 48 V)

Electrical system

WARNING

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

The electrical circuit of the hybrid system is identified by purple cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



⚠ WARNING

The hybrid powertrain uses a voltage of 48 V. This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off. Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of an accident with an airbag deployment

The traction battery is automatically disconnected from the electrical circuit to prevent the initiation of short circuits and/or fires.

In the event of an impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Move away from the vehicle.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

High-pressure washing. To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.

Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

Traction battery

The 48 V Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.
The traction battery is automatically charged to ensure that the charge level is always around 50% of the maximum level, in order to fully exploit the hybrid functionality and, at the same time, always have some capacity available for the energy recovery operation.
It is located under the front left seat.
The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route and the aging of its components.

ⓘ NOTE

The traction battery ageing depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance travelled.

⚠ WARNING

To preserve the mileage of the vehicle and the durability of the traction battery, the Manufacturer recommends:

- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
- Do not use a generator to recharge the vehicle's traction battery.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month.

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and +30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).
Carry out the charging procedure for the traction battery (48V) via the accessory battery (12V) and the DC/DC converter.

Refer to the **12 V battery/Accessory batteries** section for the charging the batteries using a battery charger procedure.

Charging system (BEV)

400 V electrical system

WARNING

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

The electric drive system, which operates at a voltage of approximately 400 V, is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



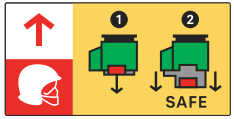
WARNING

An electric vehicle's power train can become hot during use and after switching off the ignition.
Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

WARNING

This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle.

No other person must touch the device shown on this label.



WARNING

In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody. In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

When washing. Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly.

Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

WARNING

High-pressure washing. To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body.

Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

WARNING

Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!
Never connect/disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

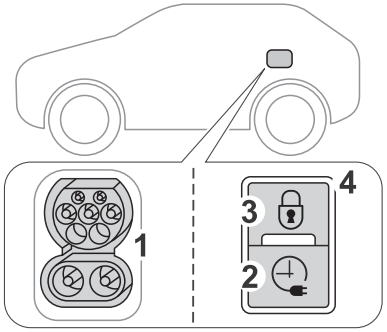
Traction battery

This battery stores the energy that powers the electric motor and the thermal comfort equipment in the passenger compartment. It is discharged during use, and must therefore be regularly recharged. There is no need to wait for the traction battery to fall to its reserve level before recharging.
The range of the battery may vary according to the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the aging of its components.

NOTE

The lifespan of the traction battery depends on multiple factors, such as climatic conditions, distance travelled and how often it has been fast-charged.

Charging connectors and indicator lights

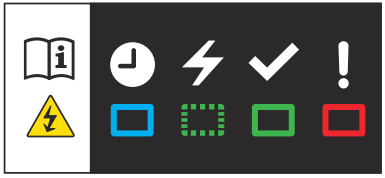


1 Charging connectors

2 Deferred charging activation button

Nozzle locking indicator light
Fixed red: nozzle positioned correctly and locked in the connector.
Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.

4 Charging indicator light



State of charging indicator light	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting on opening the flap and disconnecting the charging cable.
Flashing white	Charging initialization.
Fixed blue	Deferred charging.
Flashing green	Charging.
Fixed green	Charging complete. The charging indicator light goes off after about 2 minutes as the vehicle's functions go into standby. The indicator light comes on again when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control key or when a door is opened to indicate that the battery is fully charged.
Fixed red	Malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

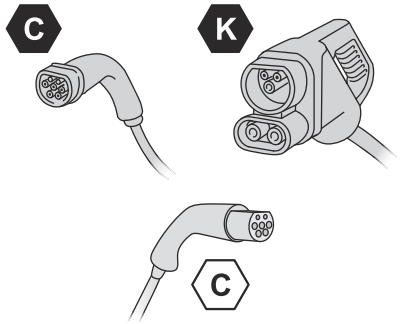
In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire! Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The charging cable supplied with the vehicle (depending on version) is compatible with the electrical systems in the country of sale. When traveling abroad, check the compatibility of local electrical systems with the charging cable.
A full range of charging cables is available from dealer.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for more information and to obtain suitable charging cables.

Identification labels on charging sockets/ connectors

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



Identification label

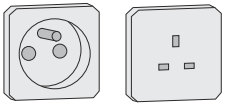
The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/ Voltage range
	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC
	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC
	Charging connector (vehicle side)	COMBO 2 (FF)	DC 50 V – 500 V

Standard charging, mode 2

Domestic socket

(standard charging - alternating current (AC)



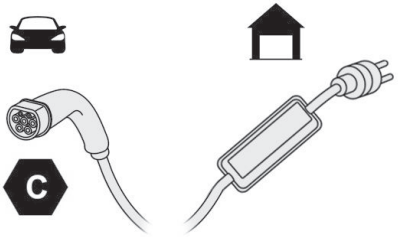
Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.



Mode 2 with a **Green'Up** socket: 16 A maximum charging current.

To have this type of socket installed, call a professional installer.
Mode 2 with a standard socket: 8 A maximum charging current.

Specific domestic charging cable - mode 2 (AC)



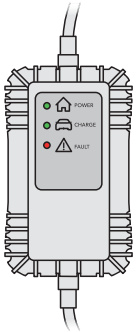
Identification label **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side).

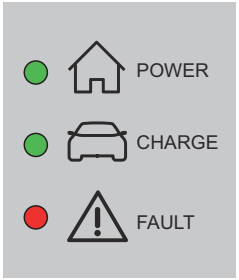
⚠ WARNING

Specific domestic charging cable (mode 2). Do not damage the cable.

In the event of damage, do not use it and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to replace it.

Control unit (mode 2)





POWER

Green: electrical connection established; charging can begin.

CHARGE

Flashing green: charging in progress or temperature pre-conditioning activated.
Fixed green: charging complete.

FAULT

Red: fault; charging not permitted or must be stopped immediately. Check that everything is connected correctly and that the electrical system is not faulty.
If the indicator light does not go off, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Upon plugging the charging cable into a domestic socket, all of the indicator lights come on briefly.
If no indicator lights come on, check the domestic socket's circuit-breaker:

- If the circuit-breaker has tripped, contact a professional to check that the electrical system is compatible and/or carry out any necessary repairs.
- If the circuit-breaker has not tripped, stop using the charging cable and contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

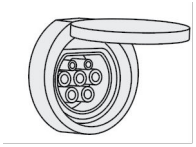
Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket.
Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

Accelerated charging unit (depending on version)

(accelerated charging - single-phase or three-phase alternating current (AC))



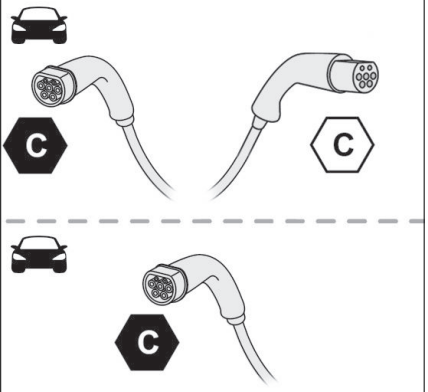
In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit: 32 A maximum charging current.

Accelerated charging unit (depending on version)



In mode 3 with an accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**): 32 A maximum charging current.

Charging cable, mode 3 (AC)



Identification labels **C** on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).

WARNING

Accelerated charging unit. Do not disassemble or modify the charging unit - Risk of electrocution and/or fire! Refer to the charging unit manufacturer's user manual for the operating instructions.

Control unit label - Recommendations



Refer to the handbook before use.



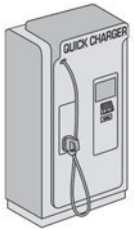
State of indicator lights

	State of the indicator light	
Off	○	
On	●	(green)
	●	(red)

	State of the indicator light	
Flashing		(green)
		(red)

Superfast charging, mode 4

Fast public charger



(superfast charging - direct current (DC))

Charging cable, mode 4 (DC)

(integrated into the fast public charger)



Identification label **K** on the charging connector (vehicle side).

Charging cable, mode 4 (DC)

Only use fast public chargers where the cable length does not exceed 30 meters.

Charging the traction battery (BEV)

Principle

⚠ WARNING

For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on electrified vehicles**.

To recharge, connect the vehicle to a domestic electricity supply (domestic or accelerated charging) or to a fast public charger (superfast charging).
For a full charge, follow the desired charging procedure without pausing it, until it ends automatically. Charging can be either immediate or deferred (except fast public charger, mode 4).
It is possible to stop domestic or accelerated charging at any time by unlocking the vehicle and removing the nozzle. For superfast charging, refer to the fast public charger.
For more information on the charging displays on the Instrument panel and the Touch screen, refer to the corresponding section.

⚠ WARNING

High Voltage battery

To preserve the mileage of the vehicle and the durability of the battery, it is recommended:

- **To charge the high voltage battery to a charging level of 100% once a week to optimize battery performance and long-term health.**

  When the vehicle has not been fully charged for 1500 km, a message will be shown on the instrument cluster reminding to do so as soon as possible. If the vehicle has been parked for longer than one week without charging, start the vehicle as usual and charge the high voltage battery to a charging level of 100% as soon as possible.

ⓘ NOTE

It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyCitroën App** application.

For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

⚠ WARNING

As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into

the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

NOTE

Cooling the traction battery. The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

WARNING

Low charge level / Driving. Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

WARNING

Low charge level / Parking. If the outside temperature is below 0°C, it is recommended not to park the vehicle outside for several hours at a low charging (less than 20%).

Vehicle Storage of a Hybrid / BEV

WARNING

More than four weeks

- Charge the high voltage battery up to a charging level between 30% and 50% before long-time storage (more than four weeks).
- Do not connect the charging cable.
- Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10 °C and 30 °C.
- Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high-voltage battery.
- Remove the black negative (–) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals, or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals in the engine compartment.
- Every four to six months, check the battery's state of charge. If the charging level is below 30%, recharge up to a level between 30% and 50%.

Putting back into operation (BEV)

- Recharge the high voltage battery up to a charging level of 100% before starting the vehicle.
- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the 12 V battery. Initialise the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant level.

Precautions

Our electric vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations on the maximum limits for electromagnetic fields, as issued by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP - 7 1998 Guidelines).

Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices



Ask the doctor what precautions to take, or ask the Manufacturer of possible implanted electro-medical device about whether its operation is guaranteed in an environment which complies with the ICNIRP recommendations.

WARNING

For **domestic or accelerated charging**, do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or charging unit, even for a short time.

For **superfast charging**, do not use it yourself and avoid approaching a public superfast charging point. Leave the area and ask a third party to recharge the vehicle.

For domestic or accelerated charging

WARNING

Before charging. Depending on the context:

- Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with

applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.
- Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

Preferably use the charging cable available as an accessory.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the outside temperature is below:

- 0°C, charging times may be extended.
- -20°C, charging is not possible, if the battery's state of charge is less than 5%.

WARNING

During charging. As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop. If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.
Never work under the bonnet:
– Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
– The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

WARNING

After charging. Check that the charging flap is closed.

Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

For superfast charging

NOTE

Before charging. Check that the fast public charging station and its charging cable are compatible with the vehicle.

If the exterior temperature is below:

- 0°C, charging times may be extended.
- -20°C, charging is not possible, whatever the battery's state of charge.

WARNING

After charging. Check that the charging flap is closed.

Deferred charging

By default, the deferred charging start time is set to be around midnight.
Depending on equipment, this time can be changed.

Settings

The programming of the deferred charging function is carried out from

- a smartphone via the **MyCitroën App** application
- via the central screen by selecting "**Vehicle settings / Delayed charging**" and via the push on the flap.

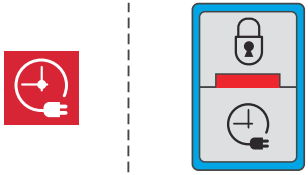
For more information on **Remotely operable additional functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

Activation

NOTE

Deferred charging is only possible with modes 2 and 3.

1. After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.

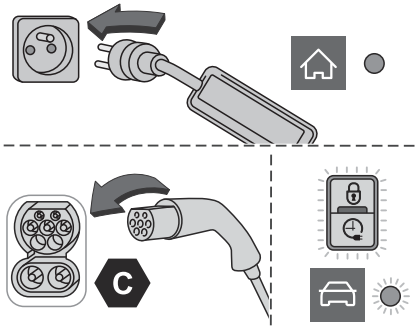


2. Lock the vehicle.
3. Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the system (confirmed by the charging indicator light coming on in blue).

Connection

1. Before charging, check that the drive selector is in mode **P**, or parking brake pulled, otherwise charging is not possible.
2. Open the charging flap by pressing the pushbutton, and check that there are no foreign bodies on the charging connector.

Domestic charging, mode 2



1. Connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket.

   When the connection is made, all of the indicator lights on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator light remains on in green.

2. Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
3. Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.

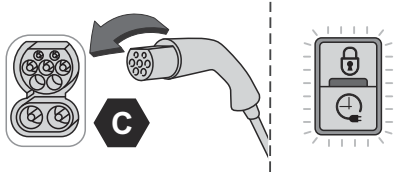
   The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green **CHARGE** indicator lights in the flap, then those on the control unit.

   If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all connections are properly established.
   The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

NOTE

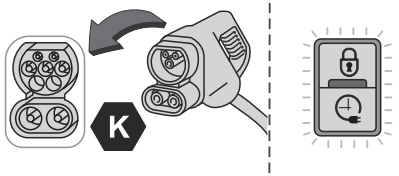
When charging is complete and while the charging cable is still connected, opening the driver's door will display the charge level on the instrument panel for about 20 seconds.

Accelerated charging, mode 3



1. Follow the accelerated charging unit (**Wallbox**) user instructions.
2. Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
3. Insert the nozzle into the charging connector.
   The start of charging is confirmed when the charging indicator light in the flap flashes green.
   If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection has been properly established.
   The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Superfast charging, mode 4



1. Depending on version, remove the protective cover from the lower part of the connector.
2. Follow the instructions for use of the fast public charger and connect the cable from the fast public charger to the vehicle's connector.
   The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing green charging indicator light in the flap.
   If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that the connection is properly established.
   The red indicator light in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.
- If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

The red indicator light in the charging flap goes out to confirm that the charging nozzle is unlocked.

- In modes 2 and 3, remove the charging nozzle within **30 seconds**.

The charging indicator light comes on in white.

NOTE

With selective door unlocking activated, press the unlocking button twice to disconnect the charging nozzle.

NOTE

When charging is complete, the green charging indicator lamp in the flap goes out after about 2 minutes.

Domestic charging, mode 2

The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator light on the control unit and the green charging indicator light in the flap come on fixed.

1. Replace the protective cover on the charging nozzle and close the charging flap.
2. Disconnect the control unit end of the charging cable from the domestic socket.

Accelerated charging, mode 3

The end of charging is indicated by the charging control unit and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator light in the flap.

- Hang up the nozzle on the charging unit and close the charging flap.

Superfast charging, mode 4

The end of charging is indicated by the charger and by the fixed lighting of the green indicator light in the charging flap.



1. Depending on version, charging can be stopped by pressing this button in the charging flap (in mode 4 only).

2. Hang up the nozzle on the charger.
3. Depending on version, replace the protective cover on the lower section and close the charging flap.

The DC connector is automatically released only under specific conditions:

- When the vehicle is started,
- In the event of a system malfunction,
- When the charging process is properly interrupted (either by the user or the charging station).

NOTE

When the charging nozzle is disconnected, a message on the instrument panel indicates that charging is complete, even if the charging nozzle was disconnected before full charging was completed.

Lounge Mode

The vehicle can switch to Lounge Mode only when it is plugged in on a Mode 4 charger. Lounge Mode provides access to the air conditioning, interior lighting and the infotainment system.
Lounge mode remains active for up to one hour and can be renewed by initiating a new key cycle.

Vehicle Loading

Roof bars

WARNING

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use

transverse roof bars approved for specific vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

⚠ WARNING

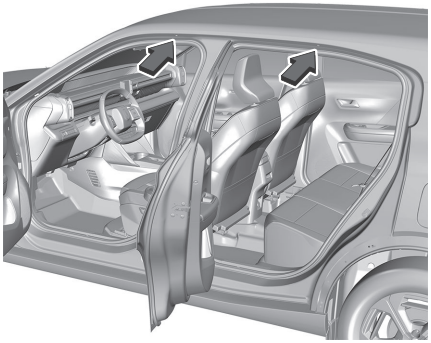
Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **70 kg**.

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Roof Rack System

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended.
Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

Mounting Roof Rack Without Rail



Open all doors.
Mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle body.
Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

⚠ WARNING

Recommendations. Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

Mounting Roof Rack With Rail



Markings at the roof rails indicate where the roof rack is to be installed.

Towing device

General Information

⚠ CAUTION

For new vehicles, only tow a trailer after having driven at least 1000 kilometers.

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for vehicle in use.
Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye.
If this is the case, use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle to have it on hand if needed.

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it ⇨ **214.**

Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.
The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for inclines up to 12%.
The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).
The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ⇨ 214

Vertical coupling load

⚠ WARNING

If attaching accessories to the trailer hitch such as bicycle carriers, tow boxes etc., do comply with the maximum permissible vertical coupling load.
When using a bicycle carrier, do not transport more than four conventional bicycles or two electric bicycles. Make sure to place the heaviest bicycle as close as possible to the vehicle.

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.
The maximum permissible vertical coupling load 65 kg is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents.
Always aim for the maximum vertical coupling load, especially in the case of heavy trailers.
The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating must not be exceeded. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

Driving Characteristics And Towing Tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabilizer, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.
During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.
For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.
If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.
When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed ⇨ 214

Towing Equipment

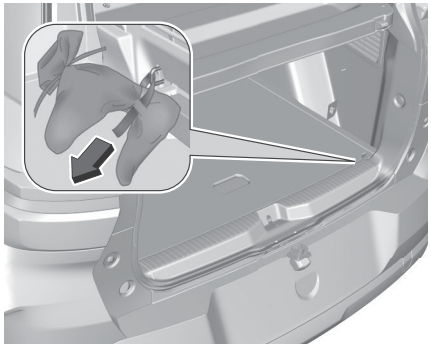
⚠ CAUTION

When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

Blanking plug

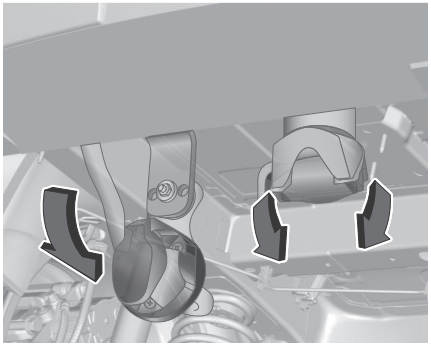
If the vehicle is equipped with a blanking plug, it must be removed before towing.
It is located behind the lower air intake grille. Contact the dealer or a qualified workshop to have it removed.

Stowage of coupling ball bar



The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed on the rear floor cover in the load compartment.
Place the strap through the rear right lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

Fitting the coupling ball bar

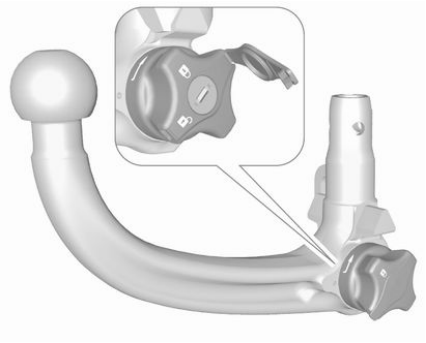


Swivel the connecting socket downwards. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

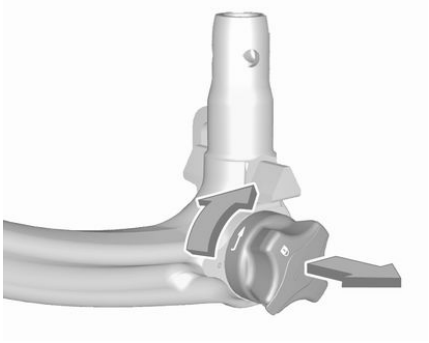
Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar

- The red marking on the rotary knob must point towards the green marking on the coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in unlock position.

Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

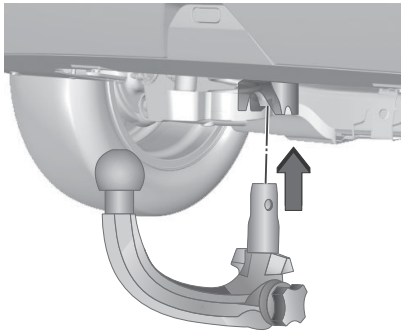


- Unlock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to unlock position.



- Pull out the rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

Inserting the coupling ball bar



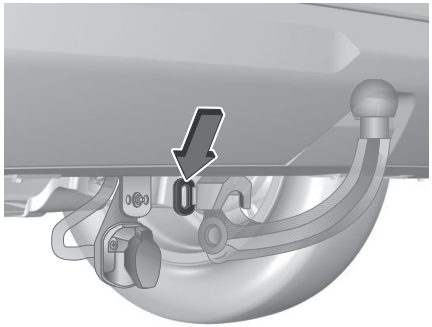
Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.
The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

⚠ WARNING

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to unlock position.

Eye for break-away stopping cable



Attach the breakaway stopping cable to eye.

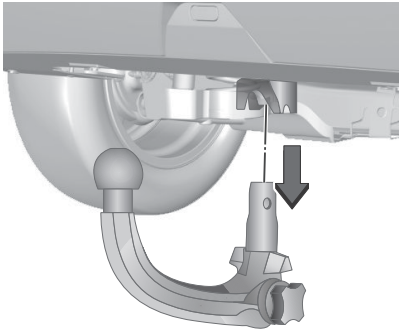
Checking the correct installation of the coupling ball bar

- The green marking on the rotary knob must point towards the green marking on the coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.
- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

⚠ WARNING

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Dismounting the coupling ball bar



Open the protective flap and turn the key to unlock position to unlock the coupling ball bar.
Pull out the rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out the coupling ball bar downwards.
Insert the sealing plug in the opening.
Swivel the connecting socket upwards.
Stow the coupling ball bar in the bag and secure by fixing the strap through the rear right lashing eye. Wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

Towing Recommendation

⚠ CAUTION

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (>2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Driving tips

Important!

⚠ WARNING

Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation. Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide.

Danger of poisoning and death!

⚠ WARNING

In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of the vehicle (engine and gearbox).

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with the parking brake applied. Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

⚠ WARNING

Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves). The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

⚠ WARNING

Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge. This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

⚠ WARNING

Make sure not to leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

⚠ WARNING

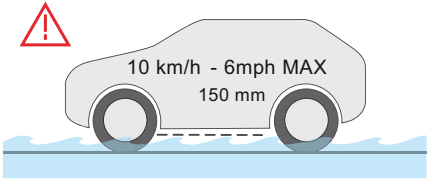
Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running. If the vehicle has to be left with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox or drive selector into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on version).

⚠ WARNING

Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.

On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the vehicle's electrical systems.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

- Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
- Deactivate the Stop & Start function.

- Drive as slowly as possible without stalling.

In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).

- Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt about the state of the vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Noise (BEV)

NOTE

Cooling the traction battery. The cooling fan comes on during charging to cool the on-board charger and the traction battery.

On the outside

Due to the vehicle's quiet operation when driving, the driver must pay particular attention.
When maneuvering, the driver must always check the vehicle's immediate surroundings. At speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), the pedestrian horn warns other road users of the vehicle's presence.

On the inside

During use, the driver may hear certain perfectly normal noises specific to electric vehicles, such as:

- Traction battery relay when starting.
- Vacuum pump when braking.
- Vehicle tires or aerodynamics when driving.
- Jolting and knocking noise during hill starts.

Towing

WARNING

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

NOTE

If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

Before setting off

Tires

- Check the tire pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

- Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of the vehicle in use.

NOTE

If a genuine towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid activating the audible signal.

Refer to the **"Towing"** section ⇨183

When driving

Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

1. Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.
2. Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning light and the **STOP** warning light come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.

Drive smoothly, anticipate the need tor braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).
During long trips, take a break every 2 hours.

ADVANCED DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS (ADAS)

Introduction To Assistance Systems

NOTE

Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.
It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes.
These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

NOTE

Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

NOTE

Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

Legal Obligations

In order to comply with European GSR v2 regulations and for safety reasons, these functions cannot be partially or totally deactivated by the driver:

- Speed Limit Information in the Road signs recognition system.
- Active Safety Brake/Collision Risk Alert.
- Lane keeping assist.
- Driver Attention Warning by Camera.
- Parking sensors.

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.

Stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention (e.g. settings).

WARNING

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), by the masking of the detection zone with adhesive labels or other objects, or if the bumpers are damaged.
If the front or rear bumper is to be repainted, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).
Take care not to cover the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the associated system.



WARNING

Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windshield area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windshield regularly.
Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.
In the event of a windshield replacement, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

NOTE

Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.
Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

WARNING

Parking Sensors

The operation of the parking sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors.
When reverse gear is engaged, an audio signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.
A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted.
The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences).
Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

NOTE

Maintenance

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly.
When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

WARNING

Mats/Pedal trims

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by the Manufacturer may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

NOTE

Units of speed

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in.
If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally.
In case of doubt, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Speed Control Assistance Systems

Speed limiter

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).
The speed limiter is switched on manually.
The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

Steering-mounted controls

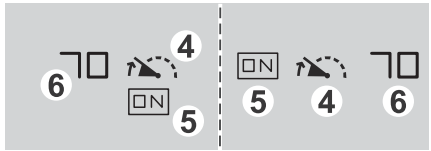


1 Speed limiter selection/deselection

2 Pause/Reactivate the speed limitation at the previously saved speed setting

3 Increase/Decrease the speed setting
Activate the speed limitation

Information displayed on the instrument panel

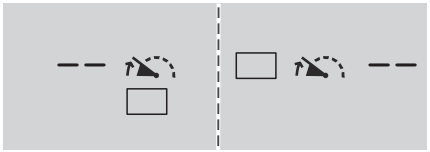


4 Speed limiter mode selection indication

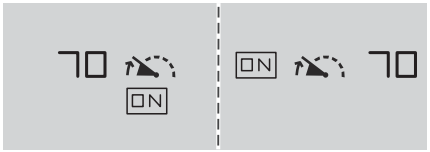
5 Speed limitation on/off indication

6 Speed setting value

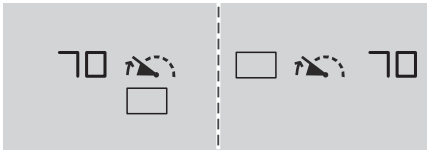
Switching on/Pausing



- Press twice button (**1**) MODE to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.



- If the speed limit setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press one of the buttons (**3**) + / - to switch the speed limiter on.
- Or pressing button (**2**) ⏸ activates the function.



- Pressing button (**2**) ⏯ temporarily pauses the function.
- Pressing button (**2**) ⏯ again resumes the function.

NOTE

When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

Adjusting the speed setting

It is not necessary to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on (**3**) + / - to increase/decrease.
- For steps of +/- 3 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on (**3**) + / - to increase/ decrease.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.

- Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.

When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

WARNING

On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.
If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

Off

- Press (**1**) MODE: the speed limiter information display disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Cruise Control

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

Cruise Control - Specific recommendations

WARNING

The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.
In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.

Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated. If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly.

When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.

On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

NOTE

Exceeding the programmed speed setting.

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).

To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is

reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

⚠ WARNING

Operating limits.

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
- When using snow chains or non-slip covers.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is switched on manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.
With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** or **L** must be engaged.
With a drive selector, mode **D** or **C** must be engaged.

NOTE

Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

NOTE

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

Steering-mounted controls

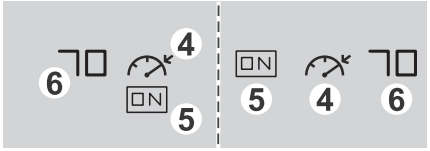


1 Cruise control selection/deselection

2 Pause/Reactivate the cruise control at the previously saved speed setting

3 Increase/Decrease the speed setting
Activation of cruise control in progress

Information displayed on the instrument panel

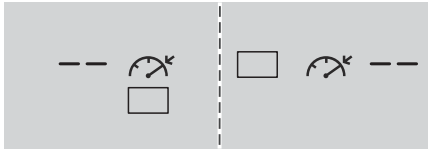


4 Speed limiter mode selection indication

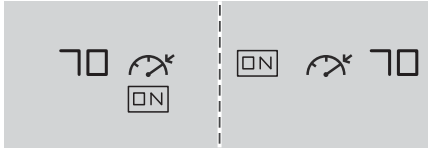
5 Speed limitation on/off indication

6 Speed setting value

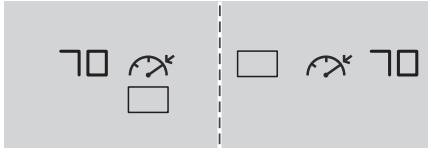
Switching on/Pausing



- Press once button **(1)** briefly to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- Accelerate to the desired speed and then press one of the buttons **(3)** / to activate the cruise control; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
- Release the accelerator pedal.



- Pressing button **(2)** temporarily pauses the function.
- Pressing button **(2)** or one of the buttons **(3)** / again resumes operation of the cruise control at the previously saved speed setting.

NOTE

Cruise control operation can also be interrupted temporarily:

- by pressing the brake pedal.
- by depressing the clutch pedal for more 5 seconds (manual gearbox).
- by shifting to neutral or engaging reverse gear.
- automatically, if the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is triggered.

Modifying the speed setting

The cruise control must be active.
To change the speed setting using the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), make successive short presses upwards/downwards on **(3)** / to increase/decrease.
- For steps of +/- 3 mph (5 km/h), press and hold upwards/downwards on **(3)** / to increase/ decrease.

WARNING

Prolonged pressing and holding upwards/ downwards on **3** causes a very rapid change in vehicle speed.

WARNING

As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Off

- Press **(1)** : the cruise control information display disappears.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Collision Avoidance Assistance Systems

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



This system:

- warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.
- reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

NOTE

The system also takes motorcyclists into account.
It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert.
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windshield.

WARNING

This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance.
This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

NOTE

As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit.
This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward without trailer.
Brake system operational.
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) system activated.
Seat belts fastened for driver and front passenger.
Stabilised speed on roads with no or low curvature.



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.

This is a normal behavior indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not request the support of a workshop.

In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended, for instance:

- Towing a trailer (particularly a trailer without its own braking system).
- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Driving with snow chains.
- Using an automatic car wash.
- Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
- Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
- Towing the vehicle.
- When a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version).
- If the brake lights are not working.
- Following a damage of the windshield close to the detection camera.

NOTE

The system is automatically deactivated when the use of certain types of "space-saver" spare wheel (smaller diameter) is detected, or if a fault with the brake pedal switch or at least two brake lamps is detected.
Following a severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment), the system is automatically deactivated.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system performance may be degraded or not available by:

- Sensor covered with snow, ice, slush, mud or dirt.
- Windshield damaged or smeared, with blurred view or covered with foreign items (e.g. stickers).
- Front camera out of regular position or missing cover.
- Brake discs cooling process is on-going.
- In curves.
- System initialization process after battery disconnection.
- Sun or lights shining into the front camera lens.
- Adverse environmental conditions (e.g. rain, fog or snow).
- Vehicle ahead creating road spray.

The system performance may be affected by:

- Vehicle stability system in progress.
- Vehicle battery voltage out of range.
- Wet road reflecting lights.
- Close vehicles ahead.
- Tractors, muddy vehicles or vehicles with a trailer.
- Banked roads.
- Winding or hilly roads.
- Poor lighting conditions.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications (e.g. tires).

NOTE

In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).

WARNING

It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

WARNING

The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver if there is a risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, or with a pedestrian or cyclist.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

The trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.
The selected threshold is memorized when the ignition is switched off.
The threshold is set via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system, an alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel.
The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.

With matrix instrument panel



(orange) Visual and audible alert, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.

The message "**Obstacle close**" is displayed.

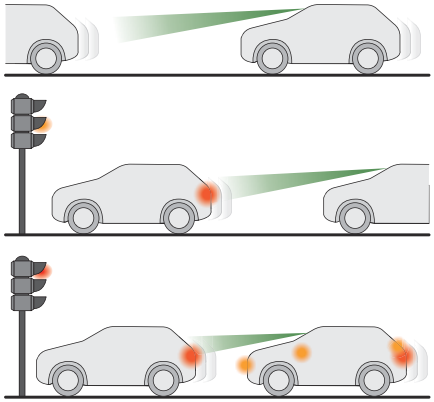
WARNING

It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.
The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function increases vehicle deceleration if the driver does not brake enough to avoid a collision.
This assistance is only provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called "automatic emergency braking", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.
The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.

NOTE

Below a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h), automatic emergency braking may slow down the vehicle to a complete stop.
Automatic emergency braking may reduce the speed by a maximum of 30 mph (50 km/h) speed.

Operation

The system operates subject to the following conditions:

- At reduced speed in an urban environment, when a stationary vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 5 mph and 84 mph (8 km/h and 135 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

This warning light flashes during the intervention as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes.

During the flashing time, the function is not available.
With an automatic gearbox or drive selector, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

NOTE

The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by strongly turning the steering wheel (evasive manoeuvre) and/or by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The settings are changed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Deactivation of the system is signaled by the illumination of this warning light, accompanied by the display of a message.

NOTE

The system cannot be deactivated above 10 km/h.

Malfunction

This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**" if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop.

In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



If this warning light comes on after the engine has been switched off and then restarted, contact a dealer or qualified workshop to have the system checked.



These warning lights light up on the instrument panel and/or in the warning light display for seat belts and front passenger airbag to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened (depending on version).
The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

Vehicle Stability Assistance System

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.
If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.
These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.



These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning light flashing on the instrument panel).

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen menu.

Deactivation/reactivation is confirmed by the display of a message.

- Depending on equipment level, the system can be deactivated via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mounted controls.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the man-

ufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tires and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by dealers.
In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tires is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tires approved for your vehicle.

All tire specifications are listed on the tire/paint label. For more information on **Tire Markings - Designations**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).

Braking Performance Assistance Systems

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.

WARNING

After an impact

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

- **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

NOTE

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



The fixed illumination of this warning light signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lights, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

Stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.
Contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

WARNING

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure. It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

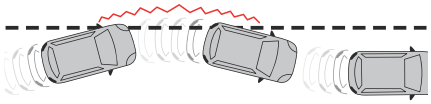
Lane Assistance Systems

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

This system, using a camera which recognizes solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.
If the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 40 mph (65 km/h), the system triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Detection



If an unexpected change of direction is detected, this warning light flashes in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is activated and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

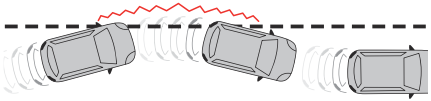
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure.
To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 40 and 111 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held with both hands.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.
- ESC system activated and operational.

WARNING

The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

Operation

As soon as the system identifies a risk of involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane boundary (e.g. grass verge), it performs the trajectory correction necessary to restore the vehicle to its original lane.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning light flashes during trajectory correction.

NOTE

The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre).

The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.

While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations. The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Display	Comments
OFF		Function deactivated.
ON	None.	System active, conditions not met: - Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h). - No lane marking recognized. - ESC operation triggered. - Dynamic driving style.
ON		Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle, failure).
ON	None.	Lane marking detected. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of line crossing is detected. The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.

ON	 **"Make sure you stay in the lane"**	If, while correcting the trajectory, the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line will be crossed: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory adjustment. If a trajectory correction lasts more than 10 seconds, the driver is warned with an audible warning accompanied by a message. If the driver is still unable to keep the vehicle in the lane, the correction interrupts after a short time. If the steering wheel is not held properly, an audible warning sounds, accompanied by a message, until the trajectory correction is completed or the driver has grasped the steering wheel correctly. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 111 mph (180 km/h).
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.
- Driving on hilly roads.
- Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

⚠ WARNING

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- Insufficient contrast between the road surface.
- Lane markings worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud) or multiple (e.g. roadworks).
- Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
- Roads that are narrow, winding.

Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:

- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.

Deactivation/Activation

Due to legal requirements, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.





- Press and hold this dashboard button to deactivate the system. To reactivate the short press is sufficient.

Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of the button indicator light, accompanied by the warning light on the instrument panel.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, the warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**" if the sensor is masked.

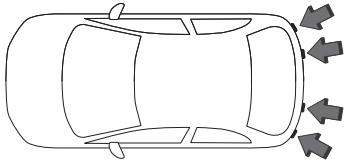
This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Parking and Reverse Operations Assistance Systems

Parking sensors

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

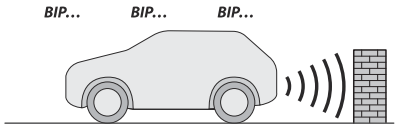


This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

Rear parking sensors

System startup is available when reverse gear is engaged.
It is indicated by an audible confirmation signal and a display indication.
If no audible signal is given, the display indication is not shown or a warning message appears, the system has a failure.

Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles which are within the sensors' detection zone . The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about 40 centimeters, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound is emitted by the buzzer of the instrument panel.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (green: more distant, yellow: distant, orange: close, red: very close).

This warning light flashes during obstacle detection on the instrument panel.

NOTE

For versions without touch screen, only this warning lamp flashes on the instrument panel.

Deactivation/Activation

(Depending on country of sale)
By default, the audible signal is automatically activated at each time the reverse gear is engaged.

NOTE

The rear parking sensors are deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.

Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.
In case of a gearbox failure, the system is not active, when the reverse gear is engaged.

Malfunction

NOTE

In case of display or buzzer malfunction (e.g. frozen image, black screen), the system may be disturbed or unavailable.

In the event of a sensor malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, in some versions it is accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

In the event of any other malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel, in some versions it is accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

NOTE

If the front/rear sensors are covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing, stop the vehicle.
The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Reversing camera

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The image is displayed on the touch screen.

NOTE

The reversing camera function may be supplemented by the parking sensors.



The horizontal red line represents a distance of about 35 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The horizontal yellow line represents a distance of about 1 meters beyond edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The horizontal green line represents a distance of about 2 meters beyond edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing at the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

Driver's Attention Assistance Systems

NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.

The Driver's Attention Assistance System monitors the driving time and the vigilance of the driver. Monitoring the vigilance of the driver is based on the trajectory variations of the vehicle compared to the lane markings, and on analyzing the face of the driver (depending on version).
The system cannot replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

WARNING

These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.
Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

These systems reset themselves if one of the following conditions is met:

- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

Driver Attention Warning by timer



The driver gets notified by a pop-up reminder symbol on the instrument panel simultaneously with an acoustic alert if the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h). The alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped, no matter how vehicle speed evolves.

The counting of driving time alert is reset when the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes or the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened.

NOTE

As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD)

The system uses different cameras to monitor the driver's level of vigilance:

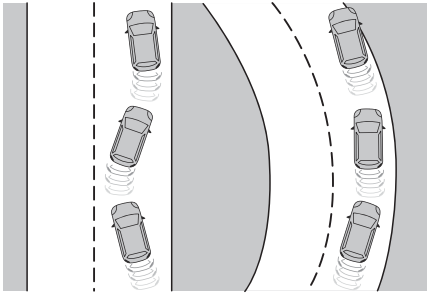
- a front view camera outside the vehicle at the top of the windshield

- a driver monitoring camera inside the vehicle on the driver side next to the windshield facing the driver

WARNING

To avoid risk of eye damage: Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel.

Driver Drowsiness Detection with Front View Camera



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windshield.
This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

NOTE

The system may perform a learning procedure for up to 30 minutes after the start of the monitoring.
During this period, the driver's individual driving behaviour is analysed and no alert is given.

At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Caution!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Driving at risk: Take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

NOTE

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

WARNING

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- lane positioning assist is active.
- poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall).
- dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light).
- windshield front view camera obstructed (e.g. dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or masked by a sticker).
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (e.g. snow, mud, dead leaves) or multiple (roadworks).
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected).
- roads that are narrow, winding.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message, illuminates and an audible signal is given.
After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with a message, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal and .

Driver Drowsiness Detection with Driver Monitoring Camera

The system monitors the driver's level of vigilance at speeds above 13 mph (20 km/h).
The system monitors and analyses visual signs of drowsiness or distraction of the driver by monitoring facial, head and eye movements.
The system does not record any video nor is it capable to identify the driver.
The visual signs of drowsiness or distraction may be the following:

- driver diverts his gaze longer or more frequently away from traffic
- eyelids closing or blinking

- microsleep patterns

If the system detects certain facial movements, e.g. a complete closure of the eyes for a certain time, or analyses a certain level of drowsiness or distraction, an alert is triggered.

Alerting the driver

The driver is alerted by a message and an audible signal is given.
Additionally, illuminates.
If a severe distraction or drowsiness is detected, e.g. microsleep, sleep events, the driver is alerted immediately by a message accompanied by and a more pronounced audio signal.
Drowsiness and microsleep alerts will only occur after a couple of minutes of driving and above a certain vehicle speed.

Reinitialization

Depending on version, the driver drowsiness and distraction detection is reinitialised in the following situations:

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes
- the speed remains below 40 mph (65 km/h) for a few minutes
- the driver's seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's door has been opened
- the driver has changed
- the system is reselected

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the function is automatically activated at every engine start.

With Touch screen & Bluetooth Radio & Telephone



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen menu.

With MyCitroën Drive Plus - MyCitroën Play Plus



The settings are changed via the **ADAS** touch screen application.

Or

Direct access to the **Shortcuts for driving aids**.

Fault



Illuminates on the cluster when a fault is detected, accompanied by a message and an audible chime.



Illuminates on the cluster when the audible warning system encounters a fault.
Consult a workshop.

Depending on the message, check that :

- The camera lenses are clean.
- The face monitoring camera is not disturbed by the driver wearing sunglasses.

If the fault cannot be cleared, consult a dealer or qualified workshop.

System limitations

In the following situations, the system with front camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- poor visibility caused by inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog etc. dazzle caused by headlights of oncoming vehicles, low sun, reflections on damp roads, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light etc.
- no lane markings detected or multiple lane markings due to roadworks
- close vehicles ahead
- winding roads or narrow roads
- advanced lane keeping assist is active
- front view camera covered by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or affected by windshield damage or foreign items, e.g. stickers

In the following situations, the system with driver monitoring camera may not operate properly or even not operate at all:

- driver monitoring camera covered by dirt or foreign items, e.g. stickers
- the driver is wearing eyeglasses or sunglasses with certain characteristics (like, but not only, a high infrared protection.)
- the driver monitoring camera is exposed to extremely high temperatures

Offroad and Low-Range Operations Assistance System

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while moving the foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
The system is only active when:

- The vehicle is completely stationary, with the foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

⚠ WARNING

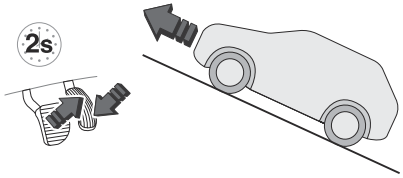
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

⚠ WARNING

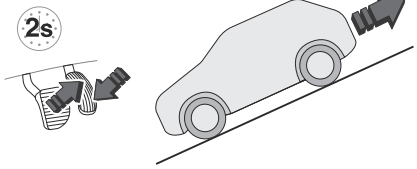
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

Operation



Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:

- If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
- If mode **D**, **M** or **L** is selected on an automatic gearbox.
- If mode **D** or **C** is selected on the drive selector.



Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.

Malfunction



If the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.
Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Utility Assistance Features

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

ⓘ NOTE

For more information, refer to the **General Information** on the **Advanced driving assistance systems (ADAS)** chapter.



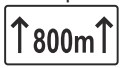


This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:

- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the connected services.
- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into a shared traffic zone Example: 	10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units on the instrument panel)

- Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
Speed limit when raining Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor):
	68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit when towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Examples: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in case of snow Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol

NOTE

To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematics unit and is immediately deleted after processing.
Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time.
This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the connected services.

WARNING

The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.
For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

WARNING

Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

NOTE

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for vehicles (light vehicles).

Information displayed on the instrument panel



1 Detected speed limit indication

or

2 End of speed limit indication



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value, accompanied by an audible signal.

NOTE

This audible signal is emitted if the Speed limit change sound is activated previously in the **Road Signs** function of the instrument panel menu.

For a suggested maximum speed, when the vehicle exceeds it, the speed is displayed and flashes for several seconds.



If the vehicle continues to exceed it, the speed is displayed and flashes for a few more seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

Operating limits

The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- Non-standard road signs.
- Road signs that are obstructed, damaged or bent.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.
The settings are changed via the instrument panel menu, using the steering-mouinted controls.
By default, the overspeed alert sound is automatically activated at every engine start.





Press and hold this dashboard button to deactivate the over speed alert sound. To reactivate a short press is sufficient.

NOTE

The system cannot be deactivated. The speed limit change sound is saved when the ignition is switched off.



In the event of the speed limit change 6 sound deactivation, this warning light illuminates a few seconds on the instrument panel.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning light illuminates on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning light illuminates on the instrument panel with the message "**Driving Assistance Sensor blind: Clean sensor**" if the sensor is masked.

This is a normal behavior, which does not request the support of a qualified workshop. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera is covered by dirt, mud, sand, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing. The system is operational again after the detection field has been cleaned.

Overspeed alert

(Depending on country of sale)
An audible overspeed alert is triggered when the vehicle exceeds predefined speed threshold.
When the vehicle speed is greater than 75 mph (120 km/h), the alert is emitted every 2 seconds.
Available only for Gulf Countries, when the vehicle speed is greater than 75 mph (120 km/h), the alert is emitted once for 4 seconds.
The visual warning starts when the vehicle speed first exceeds 120 km/h and continues as long as the vehicle speed remains above 120 km/h or decreases from 120 km/h to 118 km/h.

NOTE

The system cannot be deactivated.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The TPMS alerts the driver if one or more tires suffer a drop in pressure.
The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tire pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tire pressure is correct during the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

WARNING

The TPMS does not, under any circumstances, replace the driver's vigilance or the need to regularly check the tire pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tires, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens roadholding
- increases braking distances
- causes excessive wear on the tires
- increases energy consumption

NOTE

The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

NOTE

Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Low Pressure Warning



This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning light, accompanied by an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

- Reduce speed immediately, avoid aggressive steering movements and hard braking.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

WARNING

The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

- Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tires when cold.
- If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

WARNING

When driving below 25 mph (40 km/h) or when using a dynamic driving style, the TPMS alert may be delayed.
After a sudden loss of pressure or tire blow-out, the alert is not immediately triggered. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.

NOTE

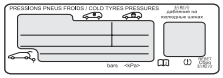
The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialization

The system must be reinitialized after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

WARNING

Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tires are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tire pressure label. Check the pressures of the four tires before performing the reinitialisation. The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system can be reinitialised in the **Settings>Vehicle** touch screen application.

- Then select **Safety > Tire Pressure Setup**.
- Press **YES** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

NOTE

Snow chains. The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lights light up on the instrument panel.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.
In this case, the tire pressure monitoring system function is no longer performed. Have it checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

NOTE

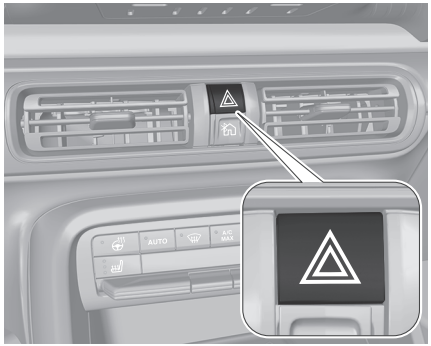
Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel

The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.
In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

Hazard Warning Lights

Activating Hazard Warning Lights



- Pressing this button causes all the direction indicators to flash.

They can work with the ignition switched off.

Automatic Hazard Warning Lights

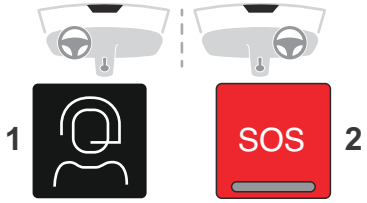
When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lights illuminates automatically. They switch off automatically when vehicle next accelerate.

They can be switched off by pressing the button.

Assist And SOS

NOTE

In order to be available and operational, the system requires funcioning vehicle electric, moblie service and GPS or GLONASS satellite link. Depending on equipment, a back up a battery is used.



1 ASSISTANCE

2 eCall (SOS)

Privacy mode can be configured in the Settings menu on the touch screen.

Emergency Call (eCall)

Vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option.
The emergency call function will establish a connection to the nearest public safety answering point (PSAP).
A minimum set of data including vehicle and location information will be sent to the PSAP.

The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button (**2**).

According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.
The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.

- To make an emergency call manually, press button (**2**) for more than 2 seconds.

The lit indicator light and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services[3].
The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates the vehicle and puts in contact with the appropriate emergency services[4].
Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

[3] In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

[4] Depending on the geographic coverage provided by the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

The indicator light flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

WARNING

In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

NOTE

The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free of charge.

Operation of the system

- Upon switching on the ignition, the indicator light illuminates red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.
- The indicator light flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
- The indicator light is fixed red: system malfunction. The emergency and assistance call services may not work.
- If the indicator light does not come on when the ignition is switched on, this also means that there is a system malfunction.

If the problem persists, contact a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

NOTE

A system malfunction does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

NOTE

When an onboard system update is being performed, the eCall (SOS) function is not available.

NOTE

Data processing. All processing of personal data by the eCall (SOS) function complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (General Data Protection Regulation - GDPR) or by UK GDPR (Data Protection, Privacy and Electronic Communications) Regulations 2019 and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6 (1) d) GDPR.

The processing of personal data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the eCall (SOS) function used with the "112" single European emergency call number. The eCall (SOS) function is only able to collect and process the following data relating to the vehicle: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, three most recent locations and direction of travel, number of passengers and a timestamped log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority routing and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.
For more information on eCALL and Personal Data: **Customer Information** ⇨ 220

NOTE

Data storage. Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode.

The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations, necessary for the normal functioning of the system, are stored.
When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

NOTE

Access to data. You have the right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or restriction of processing of any personal data not processed in accordance with the provisions of GDPR. Third parties to which data has been disclosed shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in compliance with the corresponding GDPR, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the respective data protection supervisory authority.
If you want to claim your above-mentioned rights please contact us per email at: privacyrights@stellantis.com.
For more information regarding our contact details please take a look at our Privacy & Cookies Policy on the brand's website.

Manual Emergency Call

In case of an emergency, press the red SOS button (**2**) in the overhead console for more than two seconds.

The LED flashes green to confirm that a connection to the nearest PSAP is being established. The LED illuminates steadily as long as the call is active.
Pressing the SOS button immediately a second time will terminate the call.
The LED switches off.

Automatic Emergency Call (eCall)

Automatic crash notification

In case of an accident with airbag deployment and without damage of needed hardware, an automatic emergency call is established and an automatic crash notification will be transmitted to the next PSAP.

Assistance Call

1. If the vehicle breaks down, press button (**1**) for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message [5]).
2. Pressing the button again immediately cancels the request.

NOTE

Language depends on the geographic coverage of the eCall And Assistance Call systems and the system language of the vehicle.

NOTE

Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or location) between your vehicle and dealer.

It can be configured in the **Settings** touch screen application.

NOTE

If you purchased your vehicle outside the dealer network, you are invited to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it as required. In a multilingual country, services can be configured to use the official national language of your choice.

NOTE

For technical reasons and in particular to improve the quality of telematics services provided to customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematics system at any time.

[5] Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

NOTE

During an update to the vehicle's on-board telematics system, the ASSISTANCE system will be unavailable.

NOTE

If you benefit from the Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.
For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

Warning triangle

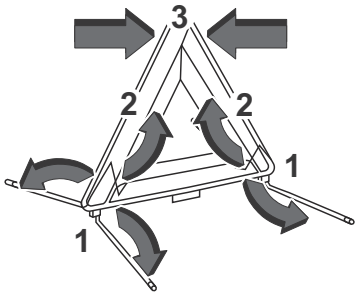
Warning Triangle Kit

This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

WARNING

Before getting out of the vehicle. Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

Assembling The Triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above.
For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

Placing The Triangle

Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing

Wheel Changing Toolkit

The toolkit consists of a set of tools supplied with the vehicle.

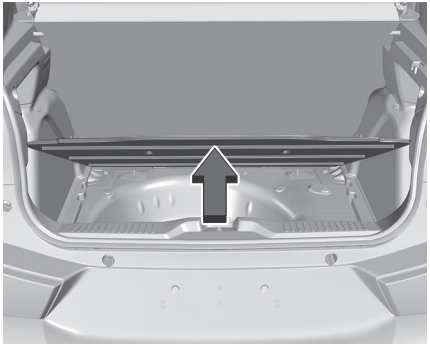
WARNING

The tool kit is specific to the vehicle and may vary depending on version.

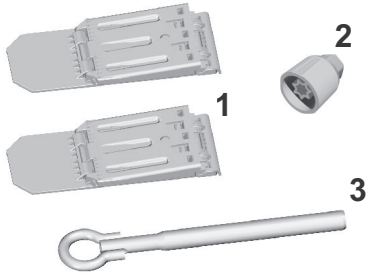
Do not use it for any other purposes.

Access to the tools

Depending on version the toolkit is located in a toolbag in the load compartment below the floor cover.



List of tools



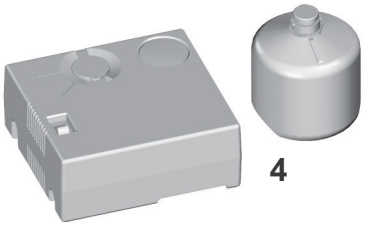
1 Chocks to immobilize the vehicle (depending on equipment).

2 Socket for the security bolts (depending on equipment) to adapt the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

3 Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section in the Owner's Manual Online.

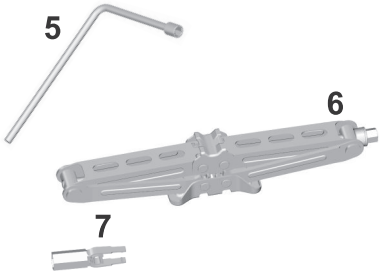
With temporary puncture repair kit



4 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker for temporary repair of a tire and to adjust the tire pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit,** refer to the corresponding section.

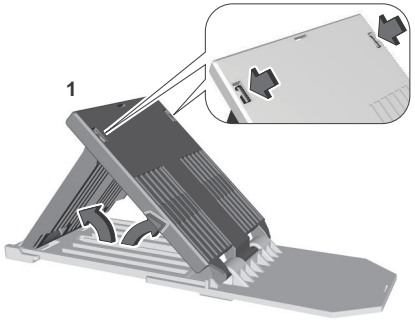
With spare wheel



5 Wheelbrace for removing the wheel bolts.

6 Jack with integrated handle to raise the vehicle.

7 Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment) for removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.



To use the chocks (**1**):

1. Fold apart and stick together.

Spare Wheel

NOTE

Visit this link to view explanatory videos: https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

NOTE

Spare wheel tyre pressure

The inflation pressure for the spare wheel is indicated on the tyre pressure label

- ensure that its inflation pressure is checked regularly.

For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

⚠ WARNING

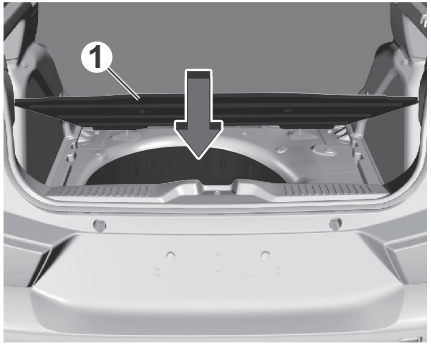
Do not exceed 80 km/h (50mph).

Use only for a short distance, replace with a standard wheel as soon as possible. Expect altered handling: steering response, braking, and stability may be affected.

Accessing the spare wheel

The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor (1).

To access the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.





NOTE

Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard steel or 'space-saver' wheel with tool kit only.

Removing the spare wheel

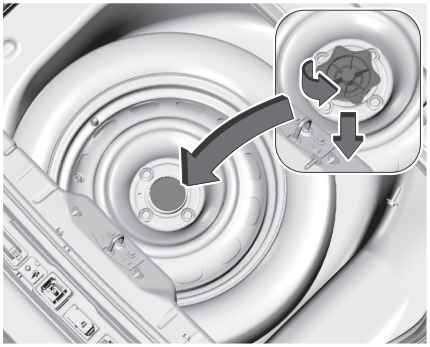
1. Unclip the tool storage box (standard spare wheel).
2. Slacken the central nut.
3. Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
4. Lift the spare tire from the rear by pulling it upward..
5. Take the wheel out of the boot.



NOTE

If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

Putting the spare wheel back in place



1. Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
2. Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
3. Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
4. Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
5. Depending on version, put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

Wheel Removal

⚠ WARNING

Parking the vehicle.

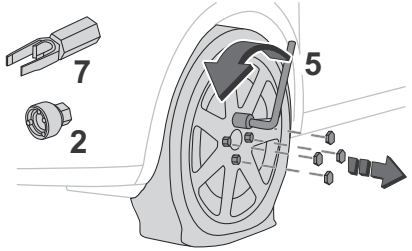
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
Apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a wheel chock against the wheels that are not being replaced.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

ⓘ NOTE

Wheel with wheel trim.

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling with both hands on one of the upper arms.

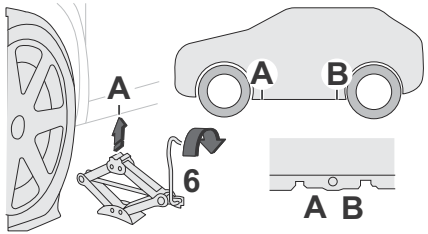
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



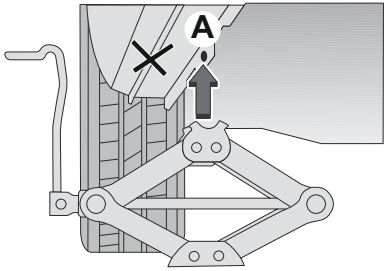
1. If the vehicle has steel wheels, remove the wheel trim. If the vehicle has alloy wheels, remove the central bolt cover using tool **7**.
2. If the vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **2** to wheel brace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
3. Slacken the other bolts using the wheel brace **5** only.

⚠ WARNING

Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.



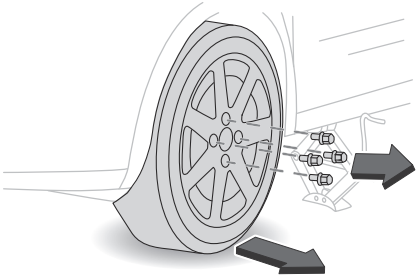
4. Place the foot of jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.
5. Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.



6. Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



7. Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
8. Remove the wheel.

ⓘ NOTE

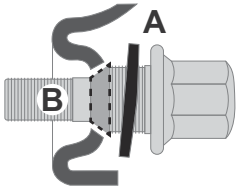
Stowing the damaged wheel

- To stow an alloy wheel, first remove the wheel trim from the centre of the wheel so that the fastening device (nut) can be put in place.
- In the case of a "**space saver**" **type spare wheel**, the damaged wheel cannot be stowed under the floor. It must be placed in the boot; use a cover to protect the inside of the boot.

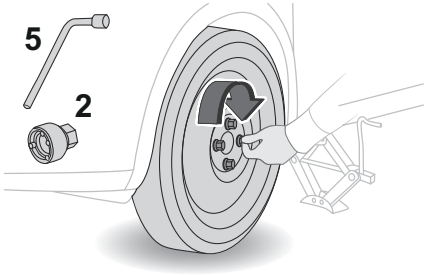
Wheel installation

ⓘ NOTE

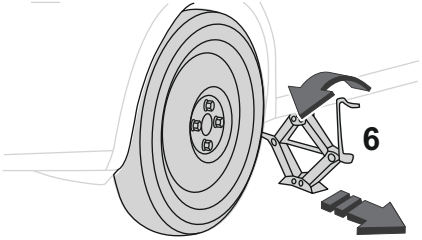
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare whee



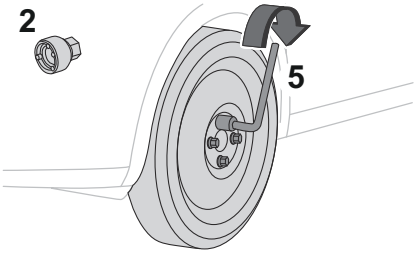
If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.



1. Fit the wheel on the hub.
2. Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
3. Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
4. Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



5. Lower the vehicle again fully.
6. Fold jack **6** and remove it.



7. Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
8. Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
9. Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
10. Store the tools.

After Wheel Changing

⚠ WARNING

With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).

Do not exceed the maximum authorized speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 125 miles (200 km). Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.
The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

⚠ WARNING

Go to a dealer or a qualified workshop.
Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tire pressure checked.
Have the punctured tire examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tire can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Tire Repair Kit

Do not use the kit if:

- the damage is larger than 4 mm in diameter
- the damage is located on the sidewall of the tire. In these cases, assistance will be needed to install a new tire

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).

Do not use for a lengthy period.
Steering and handling may be affected.

ⓘ NOTE

In the case of a flat tire: apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.

Tire Repair Toolkit

ⓘ NOTE

Visit this link to view explanatory videos:
https://shorturl.at/EVOSi

Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows to carry out a **temporary repair** of the tire so that it is possible to drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tire tread.

ⓘ NOTE

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

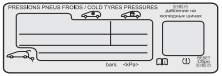
NOTE

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

NOTE

Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.

For more information on **Vehicle Identification**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.

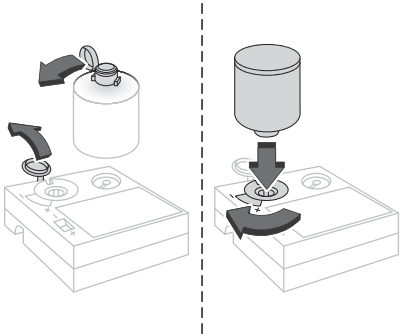


Tire Repair Procedure

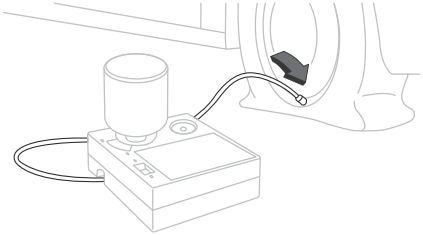
WARNING

Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tire.

1. Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
2. Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lights, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
3. Switch the ignition off.



4. Remove the transparent cap from the bottle of sealant.
5. Lift the protective cover before installing the bottle of sealant on the compressor.
6. Turn the bottle of sealant over and screw it a quarter turn into the compressor.
7. Remove the valve cap from the tire to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



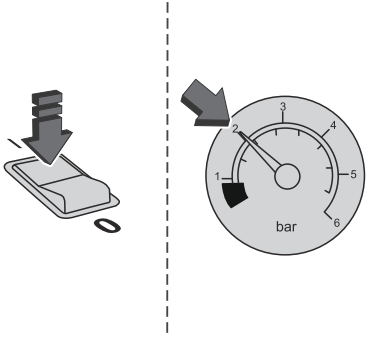
8. Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
9. Connect the pipe from the compressor to the valve of the tire to be repaired and tighten firmly.
10. Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
11. Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
12. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
13. Affix the speed limit sticker.



⚠ WARNING

The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

14. Switch the ignition on.
To avoid discharging the vehicle battery, we recommend to use the tire repair kit only when the combustion engine is running or when the electric motor is ready.



15. Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "**I**" until the tire pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tire; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blow-back).

⚠ WARNING

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

16. Move the switch to position "**O**".

17. Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.

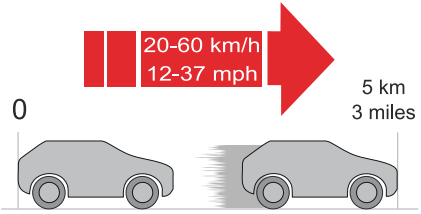
18. Remove the kit.

19. Refit the cap on the valve.

20. Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

⚠ WARNING

The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a dealer or a qualified workshop.



21. Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.

22. Stop to check the repair **and the tire pressure** using the kit:

- If the tire pressure is incorrect, contact a dealer or qualified workshop to have the tire changed.
- If the tire pressure is correct, drive a second time for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometers) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph / 20 and 60 km/h), stop then check again the tire pressure using the kit to confirm the effective repair of the tire.

WARNING

With a tire repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km).
You must contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tire changed.

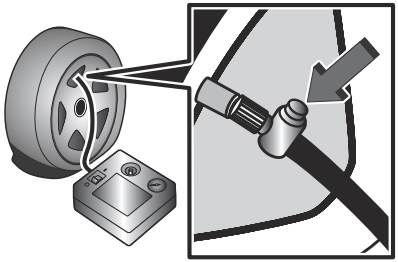
Checking-Adjusting Tire Pressure

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tire pressures.

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire and keep it in a clean place.
2. Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
3. Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
4. Check that the compressor switch is in position "**O**".
5. Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
6. Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
7. Switch the ignition on.
8. Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tire pressure label.

To deflate the tire:

1. Press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.



WARNING

If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tire is not repairable contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

2. Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "**O**".
3. Remove the kit and stow it.
4. Refit the cap on the valve.

WARNING

Should the pressure of one or more tires be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.

For more information on **Tire under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

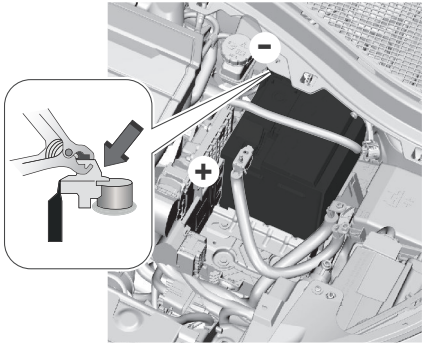
Jump Starting

WARNING

If the battery fails (after warranty coverage), replace it with a battery of the same specification as the one used in the vehicle.
All battery information can be found online at:
https://public.servicebox-parts.com/ACddb/index.html or https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html

Accessing the 12 V battery

The 12 V battery is located under the hood.



For access to the (+) terminal:

1. Release the hood by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.
2. Raise the hood.
   - **(+)** Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.
   - (–) Negative terminal.

Before starting the procedure

1. Be sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Switch off all electrical consumers (infotainment system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
3. Make sure the assisting vehicle is switched off and not in contact with the flat vehicle.
4. Ensure the jump leads are in good condition.

Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery

WARNING

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

WARNING

Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps! Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

WARNING

Follow the instructions provided by the Manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

WARNING

Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.

NOTE

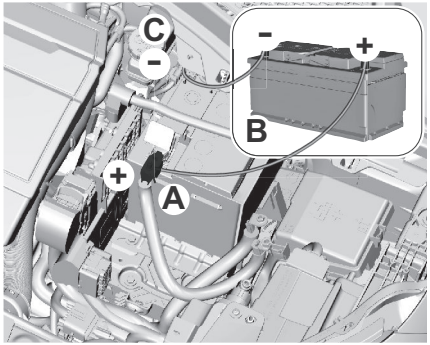
If the 12 V battery is completely discharged, the electric door locks will not function and prevent access to the hood release lever.

Refer to **Keys- Central locking not functioning** for more information.

NOTE

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

Connecting the cables



1. Lift the cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
2. Connect one clamp of the red cable to the **(+)** terminal of flat battery **(A),** at the metal elbow.
3. Connect the other clamp of the red cable to the (+) terminal of the assisting vehicle battery (**B**).
4. Connect one clamp of the black cable to the **(–)** terminal (**C**) of the the assisting vehicle battery (**B**).
5. Connect the other clamp of the black cable to a clean, unpainted metal point on the chassis or the **(–)** terminal (**C**) of the flat battery (**A**).
6. Ensure the clamps are secure and that the cables are clear of vehicle moving parts (fans, belts).

Starting operation

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
2. For **ICE** or **MHEV**, operate the starter of the broken-down vehicle and let the engine run.
3. For **BEV**, press the **START/STOP** button on the broken-down vehicle and wait for the **READY** indicator to appear.
4. If the flat vehicle does not start promptly, do not keep cranking for more than 15 seconds at a time. Wait at least one minute before the next attempt.

Disconnecting the cables

1. Disconnect the jump leads in **reverse order**.
2. Refit the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
3. Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

⚠ WARNING

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

MHEV recommendation
On MHEV versions, recharging the 12 V battery allows starting of the engine and also charging the 48 V traction battery via the DC-DC converter.

ⓘ NOTE

The hybrid system starts the vehicle, but a 12 V supply is required. There are several reasons why the vehicle cannot be started.

⚠ WARNING

Do not try to charge the hybrid system directly. The hybrid system is connected to the 12 V network through the DC/DC converter. Any operation may affect the overall behaviour of the system.

⚠ WARNING

Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. e-Auto mode).

⚠ WARNING

Only use a specific 12 V battery charger capable of maintaining 13.5 V with a high level of current 40-50 A (approx. 600 W). To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

BEV versions

NOTE

Flat accessory battery

It is no longer possible to start the motor or recharge the traction battery.

WARNING

Precautions before working on the accessory battery

Select mode **P**, switch off the ignition, check that the instrument panel is off and that the vehicle is not being charged.

WARNING

Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not use the accessory battery to jump-start another vehicle or to charge another vehicle's battery.

Starting Another Vehicle

Procedure for starting another vehicle is identical to the procedure of "**Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery**", under the point of view of the assisting vehicle.

WARNING

Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

WARNING

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

Charging Another Vehicle

Procedure for starting another vehicle is identical to the procedure of "**Starting Using Another Vehicle Battery**", under the point of view of the assisting vehicle.

WARNING

Ensure the supplying battery is fully charged and in optimal operating conditions.

WARNING

Always check in advance for leaks, cracks or any evident sign of damage on the flat battery before proceeding.

12 V Battery Charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- when using the vehicle mainly for short journeys;
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Consult a dealer or a qualified workshop.

A **12 V Battery Booster** is a portable power device designed to provide a very high electrical current for a short period of time in order to start a vehicle when the 12 V Battery is discharged.

Never start the vehicle by connecting a Battery charger (also referred to as a Battery Maintainer), as it is suitable only to for prolonged operations of restoring the battery charge or to maintaining it at an optimal level, using a standard household electrical supply in an indoor environment.

WARNING

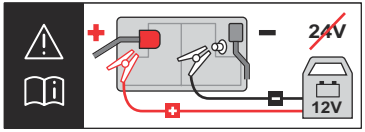
Follow the instructions provided by the Manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

⚠ WARNING

To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

⚠ CAUTION

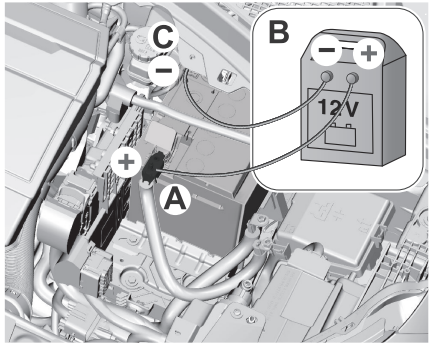
If this label is present, use only a 12 V Battery Booster to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



NOTE

It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

Connecting the cables



1. Switch off charger (**B**) before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
2. Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
3. Lift the plastic cover on the (**+**) terminal of the flat batter, if the vehicle has one.
4. Connect the cables of charger (**B**) to the positive (**+**) red cable to the (**+**) terminal of battery (**A**).
5. Connect the cables of charger (**B**) to the negative (**–**) black cable to the (**–**) terminal (**C**) of battery (**A**).
6. At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger (**B**) before disconnecting the cables from battery (**A**).

Starting operation

1. Switch on the Battery Booster (**B**).
2. For **ICE** or **MHEV**, operate the starter of the broken-down vehicle and let the engine run.
3. For **BEV**, press the **START/STOP** button on the broken-down vehicle and wait for the **READY** indicator to appear.
4. If the flat vehicle does not start promptly, do not keep cranking for more than 15 seconds at a time. Wait at least one minute before the next attempt.

Disconnecting the cables

1. Switch off the Battery Booster (**B**).
2. Disconnect the black clamp first (**C**).
3. Disconnect the red clamp (**A**).
4. Refit the plastic cover on the (**+**) terminal, if fitted.
5. Let the engine run for at least 30 minutes (vehicle stationary) to allow the battery to accumulate an adequate amount of charge.

MHEV versions

The hybrid system will automatically start charging the 48 V battery after 1 minute with a 12 V power supply higher than 13.5 V. The current supplied by the battery charger should be about 30-50A.
When the appropriate energy level is reached in the 48 V battery (between 30 to 40 minutes depending on 12 V battery state of charge), the hybrid system automatically stops the charging process of the 48 V battery.

Disconnecting - Connecting Battery

To maintain sufficient charge for vehicle starting, it is recommended to disconnect the 12 V battery if the vehicle will remain unused for an extended period..
Before disconnecting the 12 V battery:

1. close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).
2. switch off all electrical devices (infotainment system, wipers, lights, etc.).
3. switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes.

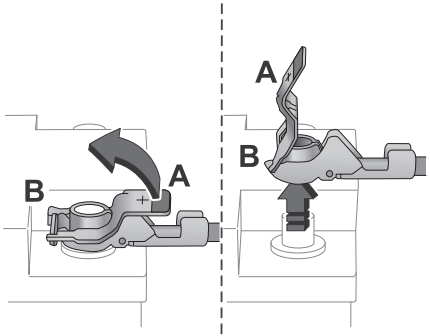
When accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the **(+)** terminal.

NOTE

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

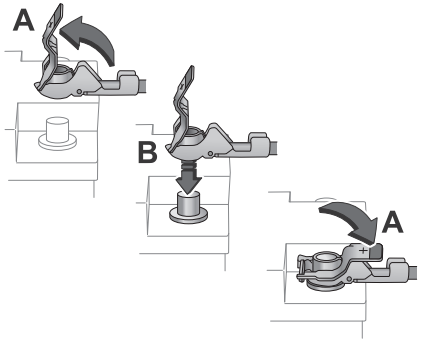
Quick-Release Battery Clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the **(+)** terminal.
2. Raise lever (**A**) fully to release clamp (**B**).
3. Remove clamp (**B**) by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



1. Raise lever (**A**) fully.
2. Refit open clamp (**B**) on the (**+**) terminal.
3. Push clamp (**B**) fully down.
4. Lower lever (**A**) to lock clamp (**B**).
5. Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (**+**) terminal.

NOTE

Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

After Being Recharged - Restarted

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor issues persist after this procedure, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop. Referring to the relevant section, reinitialize certain equipment:

- Remote control key.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.
- Tire under-inflation detection

NOTE

After reconnecting the battery, the message " **Collision risk detection system fault** " is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.

Towing

Towing a trailer ⇨139

NOTE

General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Check that the towing vehicle is heavier than the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; ropes and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

WARNING

A professional recovery service must be called in the following cases:

- broken down on a motorway or main road
- not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake
- not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running
- towing with only two wheels on the ground
- four-wheel drive vehicle
- no approved towbar available

WARNING

Special feature of towing for hybrid vehicles

With both rear wheels on the ground: it is only authorized for short distances (about 9 miles (15 km)) and at reduced speed (maximum 15 mph (25 km/h)).

With all four wheels on the ground: the vehicle can be towed a maximum of 0.06 mile (100 metres) at a maximum speed of 6 mph (10 km/h) (automatic gearbox in mode **N** and **N** displayed in the instrument panel).

NOTE

BEV vehicles

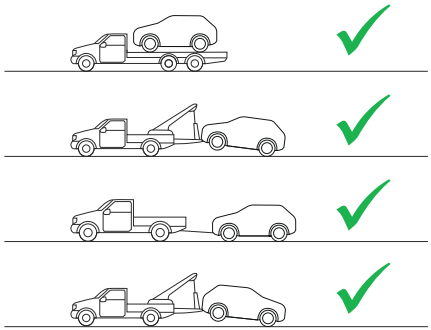
A BEV vehicle cannot under any circumstances be used to tow another vehicle. However, it may be used, for example, to exit a rut.

NOTE

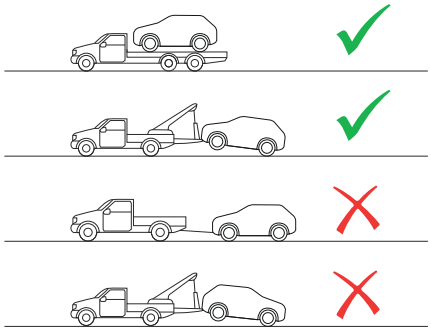
In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

Towing Constraints

Manual gearbox (ICE)



Automatic gearbox (BEV, MHEV, ICE)

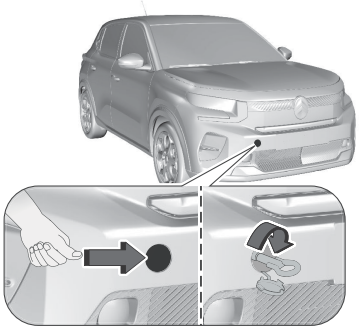


Towing the vehicle

Accessing the tools

The towing eye is stored with the tool kit in the boot.

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.



To access the front screw thread:
Unclip the cover by pressing on its left-hand section.
To be towed:

1. Screw the towing eye in fully.
2. Install the towbar.
3. Put the gearbox into neutral.

WARNING

Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

WARNING

Automatic gearbox. Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

4. Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
5. Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which vehicle is located.
6. Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

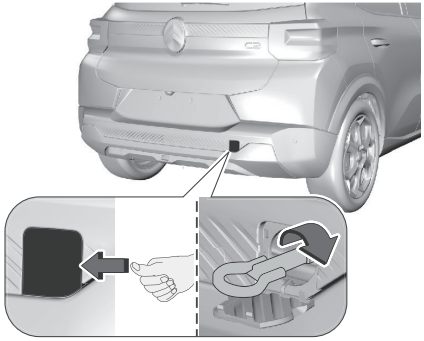
When towing a **BEV** or a vehicle equipped with an **automatic transmission**, transport the vehicle on a platform or tow it with the front wheels lifted.
Seek the assistance of a workshop.

7. After towing, unscrew the towing eye.
8. Insert cover cap again.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:

1. Unclip the cover by pressing at its right-hand section.
2. Pull the cover downwards.



To tow:

1. Screw the towing eye in fully.
2. Install the towbar.
3. Switch on the hazard warning lights on both vehicles.
4. Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

MAINTENANCE AND VEHICLE CARE

Introduction To Maintenance And Vehicle Care

General information

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products — even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.
Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Manufacturer. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, impact fuel or electric power consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

⚠ CAUTION

Access to the diagnostic socket associated with the on-board electronics is reserved for qualified technicians and approved tools.

⚠ CAUTION

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

End-Of-Life Vehicle Disposal

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.



Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of the vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals.
The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for the vehicle is available at the workshop.
Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature.
Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval indicated in the service display. Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for customised service schedules.

Scheduled Servicing

Periodic Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Only use products recommended by the Manufacturer or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, the Manufacturer selects and offers very specific products.

Checking Fluids Level

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the Manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

WARNING

The fluids must comply with the Manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

WARNING

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

WARNING

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.

Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended to check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).
The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 l per 1000 km.

WARNING

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Checking Oil Level ⇨ 191

Brake fluid



The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the Manufacturer's servicing schedule.

WARNING

Clean the cap before removing it to refill.
Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

Engine coolant

For ICE or MHEV versions



It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
As the cooling system is pressurized, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
In order to avoid the risk of scalding if it necessary to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

For BEV versions

WARNING



Do not top up the coolant.



If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

Windshield washer fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

WARNING

Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.). The use of vinegar or any other non-dedicated product will cause irreversible damage to the windshield washer system.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

WARNING

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Use the appropriate engine oil given on the service schedule sheet handed over by the selling dealer.

Topping up engine oil

NOTE

In case of any spilled engine oil, wipe it up and dispose of it properly.

Engine oils of different Manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as the comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.
Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

NOTE

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grades gives information of the thickness of the oil. Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low

temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.
Cheking Oil Level ⇨ 191
Fluids And Lubricants ⇨ 217

Brake and Clutch Fluids

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture, which will reduce braking effectiveness.
The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specific interval.
Use only brake fluid approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

Antifreeze Coolant

Use only antifreeze coolant approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.
The system is factory-filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and fros protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures, the factory fluid coolant provides frost protection down to -37 °C. This concentration should be mantained all year round.
The use of additional coolant additives that intended to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use additional additives will be rejected.

Engine Compartment

Access to engine compartment

⚠ WARNING

Stop & Start / e-Auto mode.

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically.
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!



⚠ WARNING

Electric motor
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!
Before carrying out any work under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition, check that the READY indicator lamp is off on the instrument panel and disconnect the nozzle from the charging connector if it is connected.



ⓘ NOTE

The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents the bonnet being opened when the left-hand front door is closed.

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Cooling of the engine when stopped

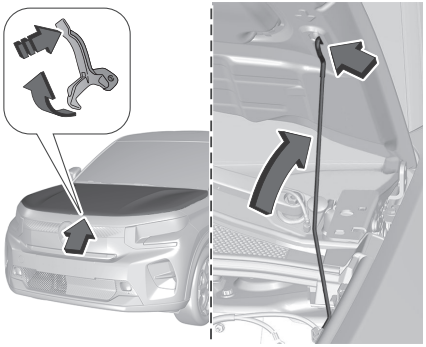
The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

Opening



1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame.



3. Lift the exterior safety catch and raise the hood.
4. Undo the holding rod from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the hood open.

Closing

1. Hold the hood and pull out the stay from the support slot.
2. Clip the stay in its housing.
3. Lower the hood and release it near the end of its travel.
4. Pull on the hood to check that it is locked correctly.

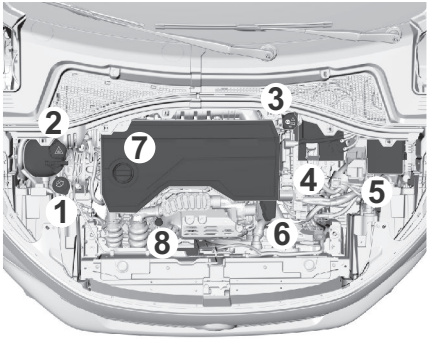
⚠ CAUTION

Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents

⚠ WARNING

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Petrol / Hybrid 48 V Vehicle (MHEV) engine



1 Windshield washer fluid reservoir

2 Engine coolant reservoir

3 Brake fluid reservoir

4 Battery/Fuses

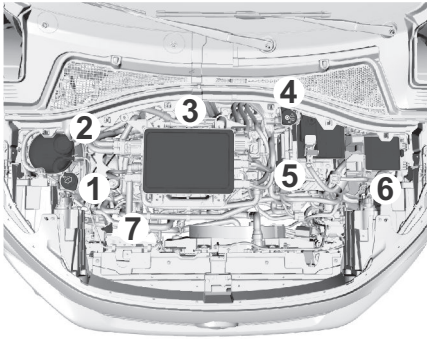
5 Remote earth point (-)

6 Fusebox

7 Engine oil filler cap

8 Engine oil dipstick

BEV engine



1 Windshield washer fluid reservoir

2 Engine coolant reservoir (level only)

3 400 V electrical circuit

4 Brake fluid reservoir

5 Battery/Fuses

6 Fusebox

7 Emergency circuit-breaker for emergency services and maintenance technicians

For more information on the **Charging system (Electric)**, refer to the corresponding section.

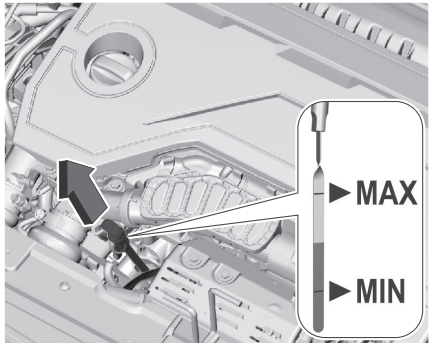
Checking Oil Level

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine.

Ensure that the correct specification of engine oil is used.
The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.

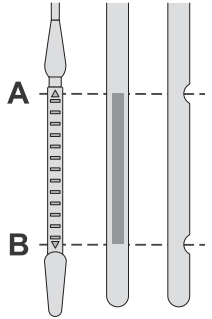
⚠ CAUTION

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.
For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

1. Grasp the dipstick by its colored grip and pull it out completely.
2. Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.
3. Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min)**.



Do not start the engine if the level is:

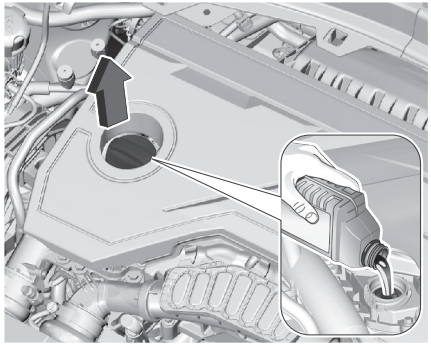
- above mark **A**: contact a dealer or qualified workshop.
- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

⚠ WARNING

The dipstick must be pushed completely in to prevent oil from spilling onto the engine. Risk of fire inside the engine compartment.

When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up the engine oil.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.



The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

⚠ CAUTION

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

⚠ WARNING

Oil grade

Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your dealer or qualified workshop).
Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.

Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the oil filler cap with the engine running. Risk of burns and splashes inside the engine compartment.

1. Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
2. Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
3. Top up the level if necessary.
4. After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick back into its tube up to the stop.

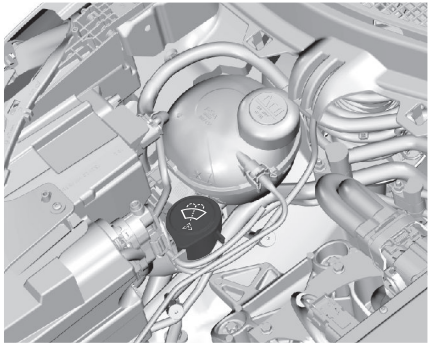
ⓘ NOTE

The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.

Fluids And Lubricants ⇨ 217

Adding Washer Fluid

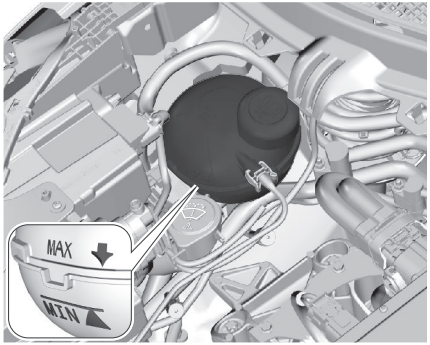
Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windshield washer fluid which contains antifreeze.



⚠ CAUTION

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Adding Coolant Fluid



BEV version

If the coolant level is at the **MIN** mark or below, seek the assistance of a workshop to have the engine coolant topped up.

⚠ CAUTION

Using the wrong engine coolant can cause severe damage to the high-voltage battery. Only experienced mechanics are allowed to open the coolant reservoir and top up coolant.

ICE And Hybrid 48 V versions

The factory filled coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -37 °C.

⚠ CAUTION

A too low coolant level can cause engine damage.

⚠ CAUTION

Only use approved antifreeze.

If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the **MIN** mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠ WARNING

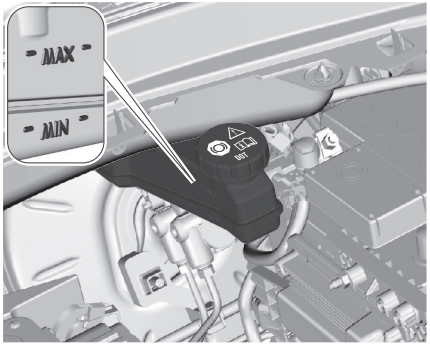
Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use an equivalent mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Checking Brake Fluid

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. In the event of accidental contact, immediately wash the affected parts with water and mild soap. Then rinse thoroughly. Call a doctor immediately if swallowed.



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

12 V Battery

The vehicle battery is maintenancefree provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery.
Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.
Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

⚠ WARNING

Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps

Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps.
Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps!
Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Automatic gearbox

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Never try to charge a **frozen battery** - risk of explosion! If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a dealer or qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

Symbols

The following safety symbols are visible over the 12 V battery:



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking



Always protect eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury



Keep the vehicle's battery out of reach of children



The vehicle's battery contains sulfuric acid which can make go blind or cause severe burns



For more information, refer to the **Owner's Manual**



Explosive gases can be present close to the battery

Check connections

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

Replacement

If necessary, replace the 12 V battery with another original battery with the same specifications. Follow the battery Manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead).
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste.
Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.

Engine washing

WARNING

Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Vehicle Maintenance

Wiper Blade Replacement

Maintenance position of the wiper blades

CAUTION

NEVER attempt to move the wipers manually. This can cause permanent damage to the mechanism.

This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windshield.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Within 60 seconds, pull the right control stalk towards steering wheel.

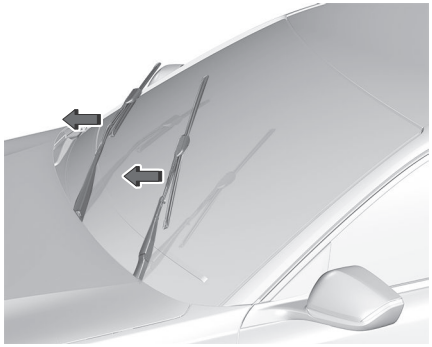
The wipers will move to a vertical position for easy access.

NOTE

To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care
- clean them regularly using soapy water
- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen
- replace them at the first signs of wear

Removing/Refitting at the front



With the wipers in the maintenance position:

1. Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
2. Starting with the farthest wiper blade, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

WARNING

Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.
Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.
Do not release them while moving them.
Risk of damaging the windshield.

NOTE

Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

CAUTION

Do not allow the wiper arms to slam on the windshield. This can damage the blades and the windshield.

3. Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
4. Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
5. Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
6. Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windshield.

To return the wipers to the normal position:

1. Gently place the wiper arms on the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Use the wiper control stalk.

Removing/Refitting at the rear

1. Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
2. Clean the rear screen using windshield washer fluid.
3. Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
4. Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
5. Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

NOTE

For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

WARNING

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Engine Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Engine Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary**.

NOTE

A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change)

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

NOTE

After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake** ⇨109

Manual parking brake



If it is noticed excessive brake lever travel or decreased effectiveness, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Shock absorbers



It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance.

For safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Timing and accessory kits



The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance traveled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

Fuses

Fuses Box

A defective fuse must be replaced by a workshop.

DANGER

Changing a fuse

All work must be carried out only by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

NOTE

Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

CAUTION

The Manufacturer accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not approved by it and not installed in accordance with its specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Bulb Replacement

Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

NOTE

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlights and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lights have been on for a few minutes.

WARNING

The headlights have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**
- Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlights, lights or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

WARNING

Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp/lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns! Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

NOTE

Refitting the lamp units. Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

WARNING

Opening the bonnet/Accessing the bulbs. Proceed with caution when the engine is hot - risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan - risk of strangulation!

NOTE

Halogen bulbs (Hx). To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Light-emitting diode (LED) headlights and lights

Depending on version, the affected types of headlights/lights are:

- LED technology headlights.
- Offset daytime running lights.
- Dipped beam headlights.
- Main beam headlights.
- Direction indicator side repeaters.
- Brake lights.
- Third brake light.
- Number plate lights.

WARNING

If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a dealer or qualified workshop. Do not touch the Full LED technology headlamps or lamps - risk of electrocution!

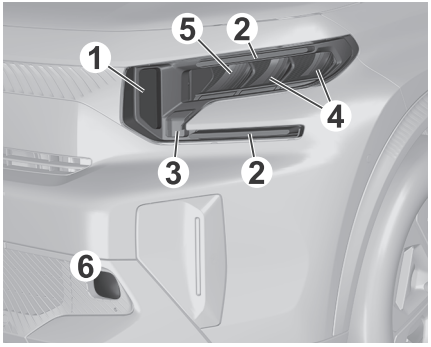
WARNING

Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



Front lights

Model with LED technology headlights



1 Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps (LED)

2 Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps (LED)

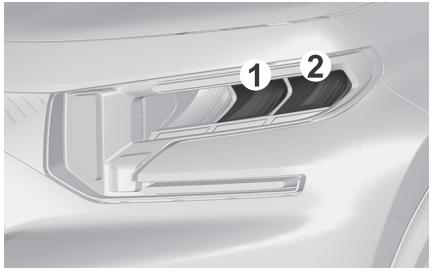
3 Direction indicators (PY21W)

4 Dipped beam headlamps (HP)

5 Main beam headlamps (LED)

6 Foglamps (H11-55W)

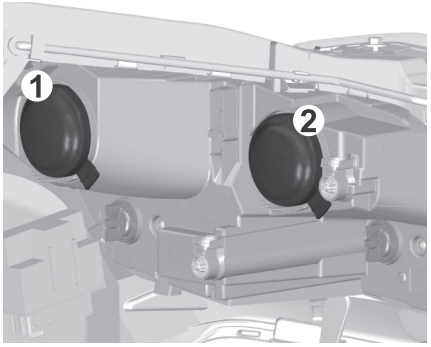
Halogen headlights



1 Main beam headlamps (H7)

2 Dipped beam headlamps (H7)

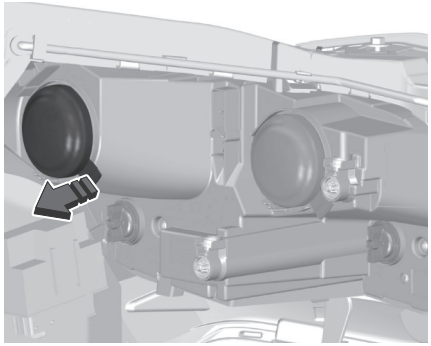
Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam, high beam, daytime running light and parking light.



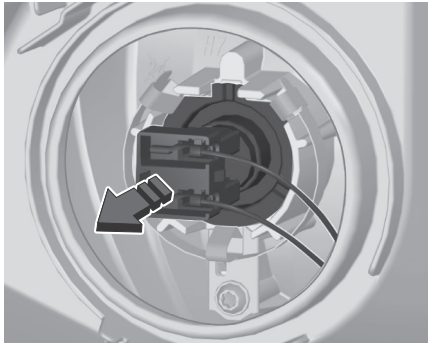
1 Low beam

2 High beam

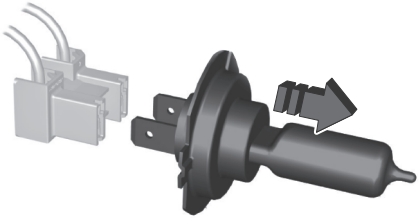
Low Beam



1. Remove the protective cover.

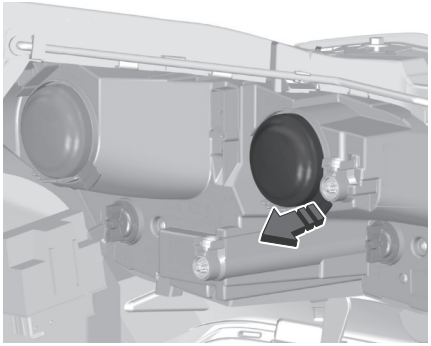


2. Press latch and remove the bilb socket from reflector housing.

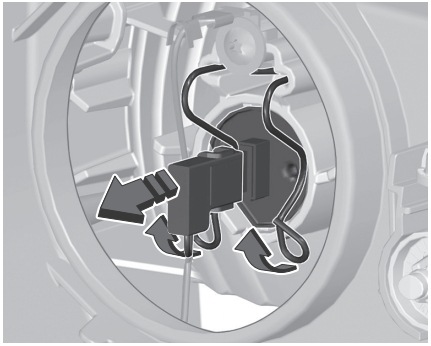


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Reinstall the cover.

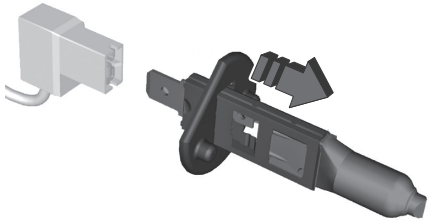
High Beam



1. Remove the protective cover.



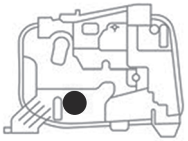
2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer.
   Swivel the spring clip upwards.
   Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector housing.

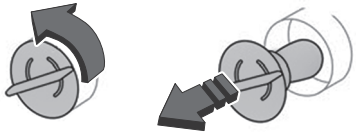


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing.
5. Reinstall the cover.

Direction indicators

> **NOTE**
>
> Rapid flashing of a direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.





1. Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
2. Pull the bulb connector.
3. Remove the bulb and replace it.

> **NOTE**
>
> Amber-coloured bulbs must be replaced by bulbs with identical specifications and colour.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

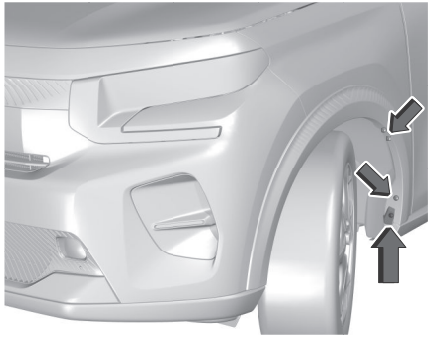
1. Insert a flat screwdriver between the door mirror and its base.
2. Tilt the screwdriver and use it as a lever to extract the mirror.
3. Unclip the shell of the door mirror by pressing on the two retaining clips.
4. Press the central tab and remove the side repeater.
5. Pull out the bulb holder and replace the faulty bulb.

> **NOTE**
>
> For the replacement of these bulbs, you can also contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

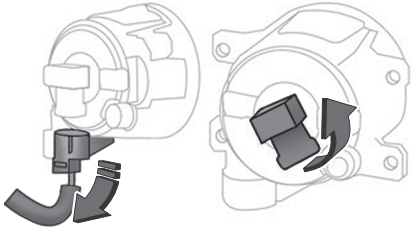
Foglights



1. Unclip the wheel arch trim.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the front of the wheel is pointing to the outside.



3. Unscrew three Torx T20 screws (side) and two hex M10 screws (bottom) from the mudguard to have access to fog light.

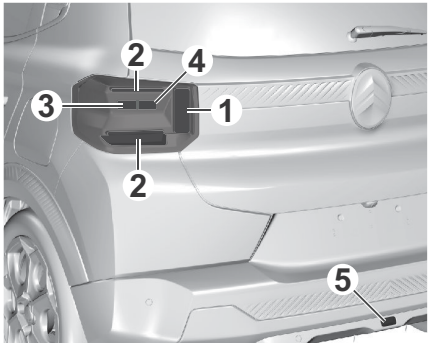


4. Disconnect the front fog light connector.
5. With a quarter turn into counterclockwise, remove the bulb holder from the front fog light.
6. Remove the bulb and replace it.

NOTE

To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Rear lights



1 Brake lamps (P21-5W / LED) / Sidelamps (5W)

2 Sidelamps (W5W / LED)

3 Direction indicators (PY21W)

4 Reversing lamps (P21W)

5 Foglamp (LED)

NOTE

To replace this type of bulbs, it is also possible to contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior lighting

Courtesy light (W5W)

1. Using a thin, flap tip screwdriver, unclip the entire console surrounding the courtesy light.
2. Remove the defective bulb and replace it.
3. Fit the console back into place around the courtesy light and clip it correctly.

Boot (W5W)

1. Unclip the unit by pushing the base from behind.
2. Pull the bulb out and replace it.
3. Put the unit back in place.

Tires and Wheels

Tyre safety information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information:

- Tire Markings
- Tire Identification Numbers
- Tire Terminology and Definitions
- Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading

Tire Markings - Designations

E.g. **205/55 R16 95V XL**

205 tire width, mm

55 cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %

R belt type: Radial

16 wheel diameter, inches

95 load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 615 kg

V speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q up to 100 mph (160 km/h)

S up to 112 mph (180 km/h)

T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)

H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)

V up to 150 mph (240 km/h)

W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)

Choose a tire appropriate for the maximum speed of the vehicle.
The maximum speed is achievable at curb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Tire And Loading Information Placard

The tyre pressure information label on the left B-pillar indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.
If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 10 kilometres at over 50 km/h, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.
Always inflate the spare tIre to the pressure specified for full load.

⚠ WARNING

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure. If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

⚠ WARNING

For specific tires the recommended tire pressure as shown in the tIre pressure table may exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire. Never exceed the maximum tire pressure as indicated on the tire.

Winter Tires

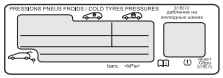
Winter tires improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.
In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.
All tire sizes are permitted as winter tires.



Winter or 4-seasons tires can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

Tire Pressure

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey.
Do not forget the spare wheel (where provided). This also applies to vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System.



The tire pressure label indicates the unladen and laden tire inflation pressures. This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

⚠ WARNING

Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.
After driving for more than 10 minutes or more than 10 km (6 miles) at over 50 km/h (31 mph), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.
The tire pressure depends on the temperature of the tire. During driving, tire temperature and pressure increase. The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tires are checked.

Tire pressure values provided on the tire information label and tire pressure chart are valid for cold tires, which means at 20 °C.
Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.
Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.
Tire pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tire pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- identify the engine identifier code
- identify the respective tire

The tire pressure tables show all possible tire combinations.
For the tires approved for the vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with the vehicle or other national registration documents.
The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tire pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

⚠ WARNING

Over-inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and potholes can cause damage that result in tire failure. Over-inflated or under-inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

⚠ WARNING

Tyre pressure must be checked with tyres cold. Should it become necessary for whatever reason to check pressure with warm tyres, do not reduce pressure even though it is higher than the prescribed value, but repeat the check when tyres are cold.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.

⚠ WARNING

Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle. Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.
For safety reasons, it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.
If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.
Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

Allowed Tire and Rim Sizes

If tires of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the Tire Underinflation Detection System and make other vehicle modifications. Using different size wheels and tires from those specified can affect the lifetime of tires, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tires on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.
Have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

WARNING

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Tire chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behavior of the vehicle when braking.

WARNING

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels.
They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

NOTE

Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tire size	Chain type
205/55 R16	Polaire XK9 090
205/50 R17	Polaire XK9 090

For more information, contact a dealer or qualified workshop.

Installation tips

1. To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
2. Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
3. Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the Manufacturer.
4. Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
5. Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

NOTE

It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

WARNING

Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tires and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Wheel Changing

Refer to "Jacking the vehicle and wheel changing" chapter in "In case of emergency" section.

Vehicle storage

Long-time Storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. wash and wax the vehicle. Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked
2. clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds available commercially
3. sprinkle talcum powder on the windshield and rear window wiper rubber blades and lift them off the glass
4. clean and preserve the rubber seals
5. cover the vehicle with a fabric or perforated plastic sheet, paying particular care not to damage the painted surface by dragging any dust that may have accumulated on it. Do not use compact plastic

sheets which do not allow humidity to evaporate from the surface of the vehicle
6. disable the alarm system of the vehicle (where provided)
7. drain the washer fluid reservoir. Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection. Do not drain the cooling system
8. check the state of charge of the conventional battery every 30 days
9. the amount of charge of the high voltage battery may gradually decrease when the vehicle is not used. Therefore, avoid long stays with a charge state close to zero If possible, monitor the state of charge and prevent it from reaching excessively low levels. Follow these warnings even for longer stays of less than a month (a few weeks)
10. take the high-voltage battery to a charge level close to 100%. Adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load

Operate the climate control system for at least 5 minutes, setting external air and with fan set to maximum speed. This operation will ensure appropriate lubrication for the system, thus minimizing the possibility of damage to the compressor when the system is operated again.

1. park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place and slightly open the windows. Set the Drive selector to P. Prevent the vehicle from rolling. Do not apply the electric parking brake
2. open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle
3. up to four weeks plug in the charging cable
4. four weeks to twelve months discharge the high voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the instrument panel display.
5. do not plug in the charging cable
6. always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between –10 °C and 30 °C
7. vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high voltage battery
8. remove the black negative (–) cable from the 12 V conventional battery and attach a trickle charger to the conventional battery terminals or keep the 12 V conventional battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals in the engine compartment
9. every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent

Long-time Storage Of Hybrid - Electric Vehicle

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

1. wash and wax the vehicle
2. have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked
3. clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds available commercially
4. sprinkle talcum powder on the windshield and rear window wiper rubber blades and lift them off the glass
5. clean and preserve the rubber seals
6. cover the vehicle with a fabric or perforated plastic sheet, paying particular care not to damage the painted surface by dragging any dust that may have accumulated on it. Do not use compact plastic sheets which do not allow humidity to evaporate from the surface of the vehicle
7. disable the alarm system of the vehicle (where provided)
8. drain the washer fluid reservoir
9. check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection. Do not drain the cooling system
10. check the state of charge of the conventional battery every 30 days. The amount of charge of the high-voltage battery may gradually decrease when the vehicle is not used. Therefore, avoid long stays with a charge state close to zero. If possible, monitor the state of charge and prevent it from reaching excessively low levels. Follow these warnings even for longer stays of less than a month (a few weeks)
11. take the high-voltage battery to a charge level close to 100%
12. adjust tire pressure to the value specified for full load
13. operate the climate control system for at least 5 minutes, setting external air and with fan set to maximum speed
14. this operation will ensure appropriate lubrication for the system, thus minimising

the possibility of damage to the compressor when the system is operated again

15. park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place and slightly open the windows. Engage first or engage **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling
16. do not apply the electric parking brake
17. open the hood, close all doors and lock the vehicle

Up to four weeks

Plug in the charging cable.

Four weeks to twelve months

1. Discharge the high-voltage battery until 30 percent remain on the battery range indicator (battery symbol) on the instrument cluster.
2. Do not plug in the charging cable.
3. Always store the vehicle in a place with temperatures between –10 °C and 30 °C.
4. Vehicle storage at extreme temperatures may cause damage to the high-voltage battery.
5. Remove the black negative (–) cable from the 12 V vehicle battery and attach a trickle charger to the vehicle battery terminals or keep the 12 V vehicle battery cables connected and trickle charge from the positive (+) and negative (–) terminals in the engine compartment.
6. Every three months, check the battery's state of charge. If the state of charge is below 30 percent, recharge the battery to 30 percent.

Bodywork-Exterior Care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

High Gloss Paint

WARNING

Do not use abrasive products or solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork.
Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains. Risk of scratching the paintwork!
Do not apply polish.

NOTE

Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.
Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.
Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

Decals

(Depending version)

WARNING

Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

NOTE

Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25 °C and 40 °C).
Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.
Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

Interior care

General Recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

Exterior

WARNING

Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components!
Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

NOTE

When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key or digital key (where provided) away.
When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals).
Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar).
Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas).
These substances can be highly corrosive.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).
Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Interior

WARNING

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

Seat Belts Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.
If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.
Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

WARNING

A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. If you r vehicle is involved in a collision, or if you have questions regarding seat belt or retractor conditions, take your vehicle to a dealer or an authorized Manufacturer Certified Collision Care Program facility for inspection.

Plastic And Coated Parts

Clean interior plastic parts with a damp cloth (if possible made from microfiber), and a solution of water and neutral, nonabrasive detergent.
To clean oily or persistent stains, use specific products free from solvents and designed to maintain the original appearance and color of the components.
Remove any dust using a microfiber cloth, if necessary moistened with water. The use of paper tissues is not recommended as these may leave residues.

NOTE

Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.

NOTE

Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your new vehicle limited Warranty.

Instrument Cluster And Displays

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic.
When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.
Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth.

NOTE

Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner.
Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments that may scratch the elements.
When cleaning the rear-view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth used. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

NOTE

Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas.

Fabric Parts

Remove dust with a soft brush or a vacuum cleaner.
It is advisable to use a moist brush on when cleaning non-fabric upholstery.
Rub the seats using a soft microfibre cloth moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent.

Leather Surfaces

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.
It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

WARNING

Do not use maintenance products which are not suitable for cleaning leather (e.g. solvent, detergent, petrol, pure alcohol).
Do not use bleaching or colour-removal products (e.g. perchloroethylene).
When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

NOTE

Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.
Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.
Clean the leather, without rubbing too vigorously, using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product.
Dry with a soft, dry cloth.

Textile

The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.
Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Maintenance

WARNING

Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia).
Do not use steam-cleaning systems - Risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

NOTE

Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

Stain removal

WARNING

Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

WARNING

When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior.
Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

NOTE

Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.
Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

NOTE

Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:

- Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
- Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
- Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.
- Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.
- Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.
- For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.
- For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



A **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the hood.**

Stamped on the chassis.

B **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.**

Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windshield.

C **Manufacturer's label.**

Affixed to the right-hand door.
Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

D **Tires/paint code label.**

Affixed to the driver's door.
Bears the following information about the tires:

- Tire pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tire specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tire inflation pressure.
- Also indicates the paint color code.

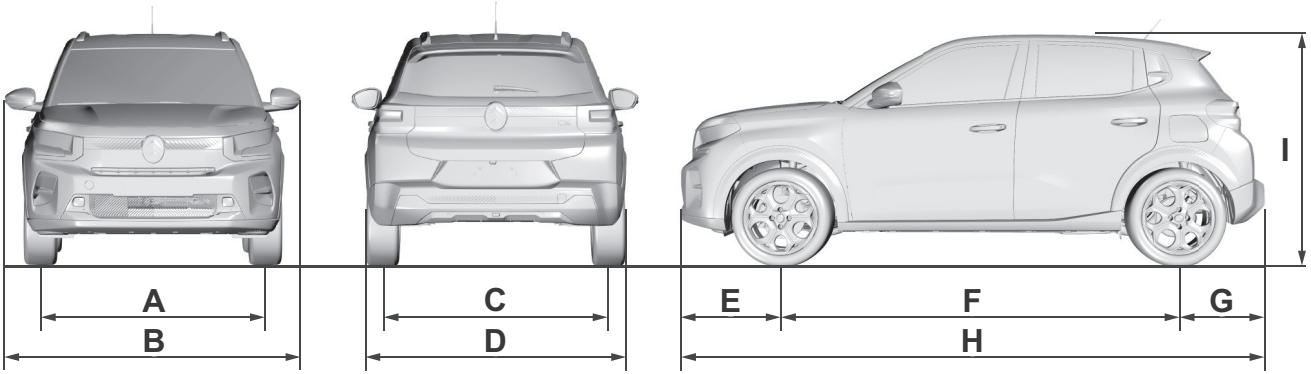
NOTE

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tires with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tire pressure (on cold tires).
In the event of a change in the type of tires, contact a dealer for the tire fits approved for the vehicle.

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1500	1755* / 1813**	1520	1755	790	2540	685	4015	1575 / 1590

* With folded mirrors.
** With unfolded mirrors.

Engine data

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables.
Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

NOTE

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.
These values are also indicated on the Manufacturer's plate or label.
For more information, contact a dealer or a qualified workshop.
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 meters. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 meters of altitude.
The maximum authorized nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

WARNING

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

WARNING

Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

NOTE

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

WARNING

For Hybrid (MHEV) models in high altitude conditions (> 2500 m asl) towing capacity is restricted as it may affect vehicle performance.

Towing data

Engines and towed loads - ICE

Engines	Turbo 100 ch Manual	Petrol 82	Petrol 72
Gearboxes	**BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)**	**BVM5 (Manual 5-speed)**	**BVM5 (Manual 5-speed)**
Codes	EB2LTED MB6 Euro 6.4	EB2FAMK MT5 Euro 6.1	EB2FAMKd MT5 Euro 5
Model codes: SC...	HPV/4	HME/8	HMD/A
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199	1199	1199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	74	60	53
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	450	450
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	450	450
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	65	65	65

Engines and towed loads - MHEV

Engines	**Hybrid 110 ch**
Codes	**EB2LTEDH2 eDCT7 Euro 6.4**
Model codes: SC...	HPX/7
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600 / 0 (*)
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600 / 0 (*)
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	65 / 0 (*)
Petrol engines	Turbo Petrol
Gearboxes	Electric dual-clutch automatic 6-speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	81
Fuel	Unleaded
Electric motor	
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	21
Traction battery	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts DC)	48
Installed capacity (kWh)	0.9
Combined power (kW)	107

(*) According to the destination, please refer to the registration paper

Engines and towed loads - BEV

Model codes: SCI.../SCB...	**Electric 82 City Range** **ZYC/Z**	**Electric 113 Standard Range** **ZYA/Z**
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	-	550
Unbraked trailer (kg)	-	550
Maximum authorized nose weight (kg)	-	61
Electric motor		
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power : EC standard (kW)/(hp)	60/82	83/113
Traction battery		
Technology	Lithium-Ion	Lithium-Ion
Installed capacity (kWh)	30	44
Domestic charging	**Mode 2**	**Mode 2**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16	230 (single-phase) 8 or 16
Accelerated charging	**Mode 3**	**Mode 3**
Alternating current (AC) voltage Rating (A)	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32	230 (single-phase or three-phase) 16 or 32
Superfast charging	**Mode 4**	**Mode 4**
Direct current (DC) voltage	400	400

Fluids and Lubricants

The engine oil used on the vehicle has been carefully developed and tested to meet the requirements of the planned maintenance drawing.
Use only recommended lubricants to prolong engine operation and life.

⚠ WARNING
The use of products with specifications other than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine not covered by the warranty.

	Viscosity grades	Specification	Recommended product
EB2LTED	SAE OW20	955535/01	QUARTZ FPW01
EB2LTEDH2	SAE OW20	955535/01	QUARTZ FPW01
EB2FAMK	SAE 5W30	955535/03	QUARTZ FPW03
EB2FAMKd	SAE 5W30	955535/03	QUARTZ FPW03

Use	Features	Specification	Original fluids and lubricants	Applications
Brake fluid	Synthetic fluid for brake systems. Exceeds specifications: FMVSS n° 116 DOT 4, ISO 4925 Class 6, SAE J1704.	**MS.90039** or **S71 2114**	Contact a dealer or a qualified workshop	Hydraulic brakes
Lubricants for drive transmission (internal combustion engine versions)	SAE 75W grade synthetic lubricant	**9.55550-MZ2** or **B71 2310**		Manual gearbox and differential MB6
Reducer (Electric versions)		**B71 2316** or **9.55535/06**		Reducers
Protective agent for radiators	Protective fluid with antifreeze action, based on inhibited monoethyl glycol with organic formula.	**MS.90032** or **B71 5110**		Cooling circuits proportions of use: 50% water 50% protective fluid
Windshield/rear window washer fluid	Mixture of spirits and surfactants. Exceeds CUNA NC 956-11 specifications.	**MS.90043**		To be used diluted or undiluted in windshield washer/wiper systems

⇨188 Recommended Fluids

Fluid Capacities

Tanks	Capacities (liters)
Fuel:	44
Reserve of fuel:	5.0
Engine cooling system:	5.2 / 7.3
Engine sump:	2.08 (MIN) ÷ 3.15 (MAX)
Engine sump and filter:	2.55 (MIN) ÷ 3.63 (MAX)
Gearbox/differential casing:	4.5
Windscreen and rear window washer fluid reservoir:	2.8

CUSTOMER INFORMATION

Declaration of Conformity

This vehicle has radio equipments that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU.
The manufacturers of the radio equipments listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU.
No regional restriction applies on putting the equipment into service regarding Article 10 § 10 Directive 2014/53/EU.
The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://service.citroen.com/ACddb/index.html

RADIO RECEIVER SPS

Manufacturer:

Faurecia Clarion Electronics

Europe 40 avenue des Terroirs de France, 75012, Paris, France

	Operation frequency (MHz)	Max power
Blueto oth	2402.0 - 2480.0	1.75 dBm

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM CRONY

Manufacturer:

Faurecia Clarion Electronics

Europe 40 avenue des Terroirs de France, 75012, Paris, France

	Operation frequency (MHz)	Max power
Blueto oth	2402 - 2480	4.76 dBm
WIFI:	5745 - 5825	12.46 dBm

IMMOBILIZER

Manufacturer:

Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH, Am Technologiepark 1 D-42119 Wuppertal, Germany

Operating Frequencies : 125 kHz
Max power : -18.97dBµA/m @10m

TELEMATIC BOX

Manufacturer:

MARELLI EUROPE S.p.A

Viale A. Borletti 61/63, Corbetta, Italy

Operation frequency	Max power
GSM 900	33 dBm
GSM 1800	30 dBm
WCDMA Band I	24 dBm
WCDMA Band VIII	24 dBm
LTE FDD Band 1	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 3	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 7	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 8	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 20	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 28	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 38	23 dBm
LTE FDD Band 40	23 dBm

RADIO ANTENNA

Manufacturer:

Hirschmann Car Communication SaS

84 – 88 bd de la mission Marchand 92400 Courbevoie

France

Operation frequency (MHz)	Max power
76 – 108 MHz, 174–240 MHz , 150 – 281 kHz de 520 – 1620 kHz	NA*

* Not available at the time of printing

Fuel Consumption And CO_2 Emissions

(ICE and MHEV versions)

The fuel consumption and CO_2 emission figures declared by the Manufacturer are determined on the basis of the type-approval tests laid down by the applicable standards in the country where the vehicle is registered. Type of route, traffic, weather conditions, driving style, general condition of the vehicle, level of equipment/accessories, use of the climate control system, vehicle load, presence of roof rack, and other situations that negatively affect the aerodynamics or resistance will lead to different consumption values. Only after the first 3,000 km of driving it will be possible to establish more even fuel consumption.

To find the specific fuel consumption and CO_2 emission figures for this car, please refer to the data in the Certificate of Conformity, and the related documentation that accompanies the vehicle.

Disposal Prescriptions

(where present)
The Manufacturer has been committed for many years to safeguarding the environment through the constant improvement of its production processes and manufacturing products that are increasingly "eco-compatible". To grant customers the best possible service in terms of respecting environmental laws and in response to European Directive 2000/53/EC governing vehicles at the end of their life, the Manufacturer is offering its customers the chance to hand over their vehicle at the end of its life without incurring any additional costs. The European Directive sets out that when the vehicle is handed over, the last keeper or owner should not incur any expenses as a result of it having a zero or negative market value.
To hand the vehicle over at the end of its life without extra cost, contact one of our dealerships if you are purchasing another vehicle or a collection and scrapping centre authorised by the Manufacturer. These centres have been carefully chosen to offer high quality service for the collection, treatment and recycling of vehicles at their end of life, respecting the surrounding environment.
Similarly, to meet its obligations under European Directive 2006/66/EC on batteries, the Manufacturer requires to comply with the national regulations on handling both low-voltage (12 V and 48 V) and high-voltage lithium ion batteries at all times.
This includes consigning vehicles complete with their batteries to one of the collection and demolition centers authorized by the Manufacturer to handle such batteries, and not disposing of them improperly, which could lead to personal injuries and/or harm to the environment.
The driver can find further information on these collection and scrapping centers either from a dealer or by calling the number in the Service Booklet or by consulting the websites of the various the Manufacturer brands.

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals.

Vehicle data recording and privacy

Introduction

Electronic control units are installed in vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of the vehicle, some others assist during driving (driving or maneuvering aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.
It is possibile to find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in the vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook. These are also available in the general terms of sale of the vehicle, in the general terms of sale of connected services, or online on Brand website.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is identified by means of a unique chassis number. Further options, such as the-vehicle's number plate, make it possible to trace data on the keeper or driver of the vehicle.
The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal, or be made personal under certain conditions. Depending on what vehicle data is available, conclusions may be drawn on information such as driving behavior, location or the route where vehicle travel, or on usage behavior.

Operating data in the vehicle

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.
This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Technical data of the vehicle

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows: – Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tire pressures, battery charge status).

- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Exact mileage or timestamp of recorded events (detection of internal malfunctions, activation of specific systems, etc.), allowing to locate them in time.
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- Dynamic data recorded few seconds before and after specific driving events, such as an accident, a collisions or an activation of Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS): driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, engine speed, selected ratio on the gearbox, pedals pressure), and potential very low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle (only if ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system is activated).
- Cybersecurity events (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations).
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

Maintenance and repair activities

When taking the vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.
The personnel working for the servicing network (e.g. garages, Manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.
This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufactur-

er, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.
Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at request.

ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system

Depending on its level of equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with an ADAS Data Recorder system that continuously process pictures and driving data, and record them inside the vehicle when specific Advanced Driver Assistance Systems (ADAS) are triggered (e.g. Intelligent emergency braking assistance, interruption of a Semi-automatic lane changing, where applicable).
This system aims to provide pieces of understanding for ADAS behavior, by collecting data every time ADAS are triggered.
Concerned data is greyed low-resolution pictures of the sight in front of the vehicle and dynamic driving data (e.g. speed, acceleration, steering angle, brake pressure pedal, blinker status, accelerator pedal position), both sampled every seconds just before and just after the event. Exact mileage and timestamp of the event are also recorded.
Resolution of stored pictures is too low to allow recognition of faces, to read license plates, or to interpret panels on the roadside.
All this stored information can only be extracted from the vehicle near a dealer or a qualified workshop, via a special equipment connected by wire to the OBD port.
This can be done upon a request for ADAS explanation, or in the context of a legal investigation concerning the vehicle.
This system only aims to provide explanatory context of an ADAS activation. Only activation of specific ADAS systems can trigger it ; this system is never directly triggered by detection of accidents or collisions without ADAS activation. In case where ADAS are deactivated, ADR system will not record any data.

Event Data Recorder (EDR) system

In addition, depending on country of sale and upon legal obligations, the vehicle may also be equipped with an Event Data Recorder system that records data in case of accident or collision, whatever the activation status of ADAS systems. Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2022/545, EDR system is a legal obligation inside Europe Market, and in other countries bent to UN Regulation No 160; its purpose is to freeze driving data when accidents or collisions occur.
Contrary to the ADR system above described, pictures of the scene are never recorded by EDR system. Data can only be read through OBD port via a special equipment that law enforcement agencies may use to analyze the context of an accident involving the vehicle.
Except in exceptional cases, repairers do not own this equipment.
For more information on the **Event Data Recording system**, please refer to the "**Safety**" section of this document.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalized settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialized at any time.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalized settings such as the interior lighting.

The driver can enter personal data into the functions of the vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.
Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data entered may be deleted at any time.
This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings selected.

Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple®CarPlay®)

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, it is possible to connect the smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematic system. Specific information is simultaneously sent to smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematic system.
Integrating a smartphone allows to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data.
How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability the change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on smartphone device.

Online services - "Over-The- Air" connectivity

If the vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a transmitter located inside the vehicle or a mobile device owned by the user (e.g. a smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

Proprietary services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided. Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorization, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system, or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement.
It is possible to activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include legally required functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third-party services

If online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers are used, these services are subject to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.
Please therefore ensure to be aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.

Online services based on contractual agreements

The vehicle may disclose and receive data by "Over-The-Air" connectivity to perform services explicitly requested by a service subscriber.
During the subscription process, we check by different means the legitimacy of the requester -considered as vehicle's owner- to activate services on the vehicle.

For more details on those services, please ask the service subscriber to provide the relative Terms and Conditions he has accepted. He can find them from the Brand Mobile app or the Brand website, after being connected with his **Stellantis** account.

Protecting measures against cyber attacks

Depending on the model, the vehicle may be equipped with a system that detects cyber attack attempts or unexpected events for cybersecurity point of view. This system, when fitted inside the vehicle, is working for the entire life cycle of the vehicle.
When cybersecurity events are detected (e.g. unexpected established connections with unknown systems, unexpected reboots, and any abnormal system configurations), log files are generated, temporally stored inside the vehicle and then sent to the Manufacturer's infrastructures by "Over-The- Air" connectivi-

ty. Those log files are analyzed by the Manufacturer's Security Operational Center (SOC) to define appropriate measures protecting vehicles from malicious interactions with electronic components. Such measures could be the deployment of software and firmware updates.
The purpose of this system is thus to enhance cybersecurity measures settled inside vehicles.

It also plays a direct role in securing vehicle's connectivity and ensures the proper functioning of the online services activated on the vehicle. Ways to exercise Privacy rights to this processing are described within the **Stellantis** Privacy Policy for connected services (see below, chapter "European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis").

Applying legal Obligations and respective requirements

This list can change according to European regulations. Please consult online this document to be sure to have the up-to-date list of applying regulations in EU. Depending of the date of the Type Approval of the vehicle, some regulations cannot apply.
Generally, these legal obligations can disclose data independently of the in-vehicle privacy settings.

eCall - Emergency Call

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE.
This function, where operational, is provided through the Public Emergency service of each country where the vehicle is. It doesn't matter where the vehicle has been bought or where it is registered.
In the event of a significant impact or a serious accident recorded by the DEVICE on the VEHICLE, with consequent shutdown of the VEHICLE itself, a phone-call is automatically forwarded from the VEHICLE to the respective Public Emergency number (call to '112' inside Europe), together with the transmission of the minimum data needed for identification and location of the VEHICLE (i.e. exact location, the time of the accident, vehicle's identification number and direction of travel).
This information is only transmitted from the vehicle in the event of a serious accident;
it allows the Public Emergency Services to assess and manage the situation. The Public Emergency Services will act according to local legislation and its own operating procedures.
Inside Europe, the 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and should therefore be accessible free of charge to all consumers.
According to Regulation (EU) 2015/758, this system is mandatory for all new types of vehicle approved for manufacture after 31 March 2018.
The eCall system is only activated if the vehicle is involved in a serious accident. The rest of the time the system remains inactive. This means that when during the driving of the vehicle, no permanent tracking (registering car's position or monitoring driving) or transmission of data takes place on behalf of this regulatory service.

OBFCM - On-Board Fuel Consumption Meter

This function is provided for 15 years after the vehicle is firstly put into circulation.
In accordance to Article 9 of Implementing Regulation (EU) 2021/392 ("OBFCM"), this regulatory service allows the European Environment Agency (EEA) to collect vehicle data related to usage (such as VIN, total distance traveled, total fuel consumed, total grid energy into battery when applicable).
These data are used by EEA to monitor in real usage the fuel and energy consumption and the CO2 emission of the new vehicles, in an anonymous and aggregated way.
As mentioned in OBFCM regulation, the CUSTOMER can refuse the collection and transmission of vehicle's data for regulatory OBFCM purpose. This can be done by contacting Customer Care Center (contact information available on the brand website available for your country).

SLI - Speed Limit Information

This function will be provided for the entire life cycle of the VEHICLE, only for vehicles sold inside the Europe Market.
Pursuant to the Regulation (EU) 2018/858 on the approval and market surveillance of motor vehicles and their trailers, and of systems, components and separate technical units intended for such vehicles dated 30 May 2018, as amended by the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144 dated 27 November 2019 and the Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2021/1958 dated 23 June 2021 (together the "GSR V2 Regulations"), car Manufacturers are required to equip new vehicles sold in Europe with various systems

aiming at guaranteeing the overall safety of such vehicles.
As per Article 6 of the Regulation (EU) 2019/2144, such systems must include an "intelligent speed assistance" system (hereinafter "ISA") that provides the applicable speed limit to the driver for at least 90% of the total distance and for at least 80% of the distance driven on each of the three road types (urban roads and streets, non-urban roads, and motorways/expressways/dual carriageways).
SLI function provides the driver with the applicable speed limit on the road where driver travels. SLI function aims to improve the safety by allowing the vehicle to display in real time applicable speed limit, even when external conditions don't permit it (e.g. weather, sign hidden by another vehicle).
The applicable speed limit is retrieved from the front camera of the vehicle and maybe completed through Over-The-Air communication system to improve the reliability of information according to the vehicle definition. To get valid speed limit information, the vehicle's current position is sent via the telematic unit and is immediately deleted after processing. Tracking of the vehicle position is not possible at any time. This is not impacted by the privacy settings of the vehicle.
As required by the "GSR V2 Regulations", this SLI feature is activated by default at key on, but can be partially deactivated at every time by the user of the vehicle, given that the driver may cut the audible warning function from the vehicle's settings available from the central touch screen. This will not impact the visual warning function that will stay active and may still require Over-The-Air data transmission of current vehicle's position for accurate speed limit detection. Depending on the model of the vehicle, it may be possible to also fully cut the SLI function (i.e. to stop speed limit detection and speed limit warning function) from the central touch screen, and thus cut the data transmission for the current trip.

Mileage disclosure to Car-Pass association
(Only for vehicles registered in Belgium)

This disclosure is active in Belgium only, as an answer to a Belgium law in order to prevent vehicle mileage fraud (Belgium law of 28th November 2018, applicable from 01/01/2020).
It is provided lifetime, as long as Car-Pass association requests the data.
It consists in providing 4 times a year the mileage of any vehicle registered in Belgium to Car-Pass, an association delegated by Belgian authorities to collect and control this data.

This mileage is collected over-the-air by **Stellantis** if another connected service already uses it. This data is transmitted to Car-Pass association, upon request of this organism.

For more information, please refer to the Car- Pass privacy policy (https://www.carpass.be/en/ privacy-policy).

Data Use - Product Quality Improvement

You acknowledge and agree that to improve the quality of the products produced by **STELLANTIS AUTO SAS** as a car maker, Vehicle Data (as defined in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services, see below) – excluding the localization of the vehicle – are transferred to the car maker for the purpose of anomalies avoidance, aggregated data analysis for product improvement or creation of new products.

Further information on this, and ways to exercise Privacy rights to this processing, are described in the Stellantis Privacy Policy for connected services (see below).

European Connected Vehicles Privacy Policy of Stellantis

The Privacy Policy for Connected Vehicles ("Privacy Policy") applies to the Personal Data we process about users of the connected services through our Vehicle, our Websites or Application who have signed the General Conditions as a Customer or who are authorized by a Customer to access and use the connected services.
This Privacy Policy is drafted pursuant Article 13 of the EU Regulation 679/2016 and will help to understand better how we handle personal information.
In this document, it is possible to find some examples of how we process Personal Data, and Definitions referring to more detailed explanations (at the end this Privacy Policy).
If you would like any clarifications regarding this Privacy Policy or how personal data are processed, please send a request to: dataprotectionofficer@stellantis.com
This document is available on brand websites, in the section dedicated to connected services.

Event Data Recorders

(Depending on country of sale)

This vehicle is fitted with an accident data recording system, also called Event Data Recorder (EDR).
This system gathers and records certain vehicle data over a short period (a few seconds) before, during and after an event such as an accident or collision.
In order to gain a better understanding of the circumstances surrounding the event, this system records how the vehicle's various systems are operating at the time of the event, including:

- Any deployment of a restraint system (e.g. airbag, seat belt).
- The status of the seat belts of all the occupants (fastened/unfastened).
- The contact or intensity of pressure exerted on the pedal(s) engaged by the driver.
- The speed of the vehicle.
- The status of some driving and manoeuvring aids systems.

The following are not recorded by the system:

- Data on normal driving conditions, in other words data not directly related to the event.
- Personal data on the driver and any other occupants.
- The geographical location of the vehicle at the time of the event.

The reading of data recorded by the system requires the following:

- Access to the interior of the vehicle or to the system.

And

- Special equipment that can be purchased from the manufacturer BOSCH (www.BoschCDRTool.com).

Aside from the vehicle Manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement agencies may access this data in order to analyse the event.
Reactivate the system as soon as the level of grip permits.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and immobiliser.
It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting.
RFID technology in STELLANTIS vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other STELLANTIS system containing personal information.

INDEX

A

Access to engine compartment 189
Active Safety Brake 149
ADAS Data Recorder (ADR) system . . 223
Adding Coolant Fluid 193
Adding Washer Fluid 192
Adjusting tire pressure 177
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 151
Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC) 150
Assist And SOS 166
Assistance Call 168
Automatic climate control system . . . 77
Average consumption 62

B

Brake fluid 187
Bulb replacement 197

C

Central locking 9
Charge level indicator (BEV) 60
Charging system (BEV) 124
Charging the traction battery (BEV) . . 129
Checking Brake Fluid 193
Checking Fluids Level 187
Checking Oil Level 191
Clothes hooks 52
Collision Risk Alert 148
Configuration menu 62
Connectivity 92
Coolant temperature indicator 71
Cruise Control 144
Current consumption 61

D

Dashboard Instruments And Control . i, 56
Dimensions 212
Direction indicators 46
Display screen 58
Disposal Prescriptions 221
Distance recorders 73
Doors 16
Doors, opening 16
Drive selector (BEV) 118
Driver Attention Warning by timer . . 158
Driver Drowsiness Detection with Driver Monitoring Camera 159
Driver Drowsiness Detection with Front View Camera 159

E

e-Auto mode (Hybrid 48 V) 108
Electric dual-clutch automatic gearbox (e-DCS6) 115
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 151
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) . . 151
Emergency Call (eCall) 166
Energy economy mode 105
Engine Compartment 189
Engine data 213
Engine oil 187
Engine oil level indicator 72
Event Data Recorder (EDR) system . . 223
Event Data Recorders 226

F

Front head restraints 21
Front lights (replacement) 199
Fuels compatibilty 120
Fuses 197

G

Gearbox (EAT6) 113

H

Hazard Warning Lights 166
Heated windshield 75
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 161
Hooks 53
Horn 41
Hybrid 48 V Vehicle (MHEV) 6
Hybrid system (Hybrid 48 V) 122

I

In Case Of Emergency . . . . . i, 166
Instrument Panel 56
Instrument Panel Overview 56
Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA) 148
Interior lighting (replacement) 202

J

Jacking the Vehicle and Wheel Changing 169
Jump Starting 177
Jump Starting, assisting another vehicle 180

K

Key with Remote Control 9

L

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 151
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) 152
Leather (care) 209
Lighting
Exterior 44
Lighting Controls 44
Lighting dimmer 73
Locating your vehicle 10
Lost keys, remote control 12

M

Main controls 100
Maintenance And Vehicle Care . . . i, 186
Manual climate control system 76
Manual gearbox 113
Manual parking brake 109
Matrix instrument cluster 58
Maximum Windshield Demist-Defrost Control 75
Mirror Screen® 94

N

Navigation 90

O

Overspeed alert 164

P

Parking brake 109
Parking sensors 156
Periodic Checks 186
Phone 96
Power indicator (MHEV or BEV) 59

R

Radio 86
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 227
Rear lights (replacement) 202
Rear shelf 53
Rear shelf (Van) 54
Rear Window Demist-Defrost Control . 75
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 188
Refuelling 120
Remote Control 9
Remote Control Battery 12
Remotely operable additional functions (BEV) 101
Removing the spare wheel 171
Reversing camera 157
Roof bars 133
Roof rack, mounting 134

S

Scheduled Servicing 186
Seat Belts Maintenance 208
Service indicator 72
Settings 98
Smartphone Station 99
Spare Wheel 170
Speed limiter 143
Steering wheel adjustment 40
Steering Wheel Cluster Controls 56
Steering Wheel Controls 88

T

Tailgate, closing 18
Tailgate, opening 18
Technical Specifications . . . . . i, 211
Temperature preconditioning (BEV and automatic air conditionniong) 76
Textile 209
Tire chains 205
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 164
Tire Repair Kit 174
Tire Repair Procedure 175
Tire Repair Toolkit 174
Tires and Wheels 202
Towing 135, 136, 183
Towing another vehicle 185
Towing data 214
Towing device 134
Towing the vehicle 184
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) 161
Trip computer 61
Trip reset 61

U

Unfolding / Folding the key 9
Unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key 12
Updating The System 83

V

Vehicle Data 212
Vehicle data recording and privacy . . .221
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . . 211
Vehicle Maintenance 195
Voice commands 89

W

Warning and indicator lights 63
Warning triangle 169
Weights and towed loads 213
Wheel Changing Toolkit 169
Wheel Removal 172
Windshield washer fluid 188
Wiper Blade Replacement 195

Recycled materials/End-of-Life Vehicles
Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) and The End-of-Life Vehicles (Producer Responsibility) (Amendment) Regulation 2010 No.1094, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.
No part of this document may be reproduced or translated without written permission from Automobiles CITROËN.

Automobiles CITROËN,
société par actions simplifiée au capital social de 159.000.000 euros dont le siège social est situé 43 rue Jean-Pierre TIMBAUD, 78300 POISSY, FRANCE et immatriculée auprès du RCS de Versailles sous le numéro 642 050 199.
www.citroen.com

Edition
06/2026



Driving innovation for tomorrow.

For over 50 years, **TotalEnergies and Stellantis have shared a common vision of performance, innovation, and mobility for the future.**

This long-standing partnership is built on close technical collaboration, from product design to after-sales service across official networks. By combining their expertise, the two companies have developed cutting-edge lubrication technologies tailored to the evolving needs of Citroën powertrains.

The co-branded **Quartz Mopar** and **Quartz EV3R Mopar** ranges reflect this shared expertise. Specifically designed and **approved by Citroën**, they include **high-performance engine oils** covering every Citroën powertrain. Each formulation helps keep engines clean, reduce wear, and support fuel efficiency, ensuring smooth operation mile after mile, even under the most demanding conditions.

We're taking innovation further with **Quartz EV3R Mopar,** which introduces the **3R approach (Reduce, Reuse, Regenerate)** using regenerated base oils and a recyclable bottle, while delivering the same performance as standard Quartz oils, with a lower impact compared to our conventional products.

Your authorized Citroën repairer will recommend the right oil for your model and service schedule. Available and **recommended within Citroën authorized after-sales networks,** Quartz Mopar offers confidence, durability, and proven technology backed by decades of partnership.

CITROËN PREFERS TotalEnergies

CITROËN | TotalEnergies

OFFICIAL PARTNERS

CC3EUDO2606en-1